

*CGP*



**GCSE AQA**

# **Combined Science**

Includes **Free** Online Edition,  
Video Solutions & Digital Quiz

**Revision Guide**

**Higher Level**



laboratory tested

# CGP's checklist for GCSE Science success!



This spectacular CGP Revision Guide



...and the matching Exam Practice Workbook



A snug hat to stop your brain exploding from the amazingness of Science



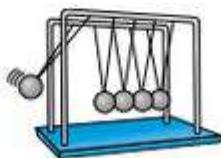
A helmet is safest



CGP Revision Question Cards



One of these things



(It's a Science experiment and stress relief at the same time.)

## cgpbooks.co.uk

P.S. Science won't really make your brain explode. Probably.



# GCSE

## Combined Science

Can't choose between Biology, Chemistry and Physics? Well, there's no need to pick a favourite — Combined Science includes them all. It's like the Neapolitan ice-cream of GCSEs.

While we're on the ice theme, this CGP book makes it easy to stay cool throughout your revision. We've covered every inch of the course, from cells to compounds to radioactive contamination.

And don't forget the brilliant online extras. We've added step-by-step video solutions and brain-teasing quizzes. It's anything but vanilla.

## Revision Guide

### Higher Level



# Contents

## Working Scientifically

The Scientific Method.....	1
Communication & Issues Created by Science.....	2
Risk.....	3
Designing Investigations.....	4
Collecting Data.....	5
Processing and Presenting Data.....	6
Units and Equations.....	8
Drawing Conclusions.....	9
Uncertainties and Evaluations.....	10

## Topic B1 — Cell Biology

Cells.....	11
Microscopy.....	12
More on Microscopy.....	13
Cell Differentiation and Specialisation.....	14
Chromosomes and Mitosis.....	15
Stem Cells.....	16
Diffusion.....	17
Osmosis.....	18
Active Transport.....	19
Exchange Surfaces.....	20
Exchanging Substances.....	21
More on Exchanging Substances.....	22
Revision Questions for Topic B1.....	23

## Topic B2 — Organisation

Cell Organisation.....	24
Enzymes.....	25
Investigating Enzymatic Reactions.....	26
Enzymes and Digestion.....	27
More on Enzymes and Digestion.....	28
Food Tests.....	29
The Lungs.....	30
Circulatory System — The Heart.....	31
Circulatory System — Blood Vessels.....	32
Circulatory System — Blood.....	33
Cardiovascular Disease.....	34
More on Cardiovascular Disease.....	35
Health and Disease.....	36
Risk Factors for Non-Communicable Diseases.....	37
Cancer.....	38
Plant Cell Organisation.....	39
Transpiration and Translocation.....	40
Transpiration and Stomata.....	41
Revision Questions for Topic B2.....	42

## Topic B3 — Infection and Response

Communicable Disease.....	43
Viral, Fungal and Protist Diseases.....	44
Bacterial Diseases and Preventing Disease.....	45
Fighting Disease.....	46
Fighting Disease — Vaccination.....	47
Fighting Disease — Drugs.....	48
Developing Drugs.....	49

## Topic B4 — Bioenergetics

Photosynthesis and Limiting Factors.....	50
The Rate of Photosynthesis.....	51
Respiration and Metabolism.....	54

Aerobic and Anaerobic Respiration.....	55
Exercise.....	56
Revision Questions for Topics B3 & B4.....	57

## Topic B5 — Homeostasis and Response

Homeostasis.....	58
The Nervous System.....	59
Synapses and Reflexes.....	60
Investigating Reaction Time.....	61
The Endocrine System.....	62
Controlling Blood Glucose.....	63
Puberty and the Menstrual Cycle.....	64
Controlling Fertility.....	65
More on Controlling Fertility.....	66
Adrenaline and Thyroxine.....	67

## Topic B6 — Inheritance, Variation and Evolution

DNA.....	68
Reproduction.....	69
Meiosis.....	70
X and Y Chromosomes.....	71
Genetic Diagrams.....	72
More Genetic Diagrams.....	73
Inherited Disorders.....	74
Variation.....	75
Evolution.....	76
Selective Breeding.....	77
Genetic Engineering.....	78
Fossils.....	79
Antibiotic-Resistant Bacteria.....	80
Classification.....	81
Revision Questions for Topics B5 & B6.....	82

## Topic B7 — Ecology

Competition.....	83
Abiotic and Biotic Factors.....	84
Adaptations.....	85
Food Chains.....	86
Using Quadrats.....	87
Using Transects.....	88
The Water Cycle.....	89
The Carbon Cycle.....	90
Biodiversity and Waste Management.....	91
Global Warming.....	92
Deforestation and Land Use.....	93
Maintaining Ecosystems and Biodiversity.....	94
Revision Questions for Topic B7.....	95

## Topic C1 — Atomic Structure and the Periodic Table

Atoms.....	96
Elements.....	97
Compounds.....	98
Chemical Equations.....	99
Mixtures and Chromatography.....	100
More Separation Techniques.....	101
Distillation.....	102
The History of the Atom.....	103
Electronic Structure.....	104



Development of the Periodic Table.....	105
The Modern Periodic Table.....	106
Metals and Non-Metals.....	107
Group 1 Elements.....	108
Group 7 Elements.....	109
Group 0 Elements.....	110
Revision Questions for Topic C1.....	111

## Topic C2 — Bonding, Structure and Properties of Matter

Formation of Ions.....	112
Ionic Bonding.....	113
Ionic Compounds.....	114
Covalent Bonding.....	115
Simple Molecular Substances.....	116
Polymers and Giant Covalent Structures.....	117
Allotropes of Carbon.....	118
Metallic Bonding.....	119
States of Matter.....	120
Changing State.....	121
Revision Questions for Topic C2.....	122

## Topic C3 — Quantitative Chemistry

Relative Formula Mass.....	123
The Mole.....	124
Conservation of Mass.....	125
The Mole and Equations.....	126
Limiting Reactants.....	127
Concentrations of Solutions.....	128

## Topic C4 — Chemical Changes

Acids and Bases.....	129
Strong Acids and Weak Acids.....	130
Reactions of Acids.....	131
The Reactivity Series.....	132
Separating Metals from Metal Oxides.....	133
Redox Reactions.....	134
Electrolysis.....	135
Electrolysis of Aqueous Solutions.....	136
Revision Questions for Topics C3 & C4.....	137

## Topic C5 — Energy Changes

Exothermic and Endothermic Reactions.....	138
More Exothermic and Endothermic Reactions.....	139
Bond Energies.....	140
Revision Questions for Topic C5.....	141

## Topic C6 — The Rate and Extent of Chemical Change

Rates of Reaction.....	142
Factors Affecting Rates of Reaction.....	143
Measuring Rates of Reaction.....	144
Two Rates Experiments.....	145
Finding Reaction Rates from Graphs.....	146
Reversible Reactions.....	147
Le Chatelier's Principle.....	148
Revision Questions for Topic C6.....	149

## Topic C7 — Organic Chemistry

Hydrocarbons.....	150
Fractional Distillation.....	151
Uses and Cracking of Crude Oil.....	152

## Topic C8 — Chemical Analysis

Purity and Formulations.....	153
Paper Chromatography.....	154
Tests for Gases.....	155
Revision Questions for Topics C7 & C8.....	156

## Topic C9 — Chemistry of the Atmosphere

The Evolution of the Atmosphere.....	157
Greenhouse Gases and Climate Change.....	158
Carbon Footprints.....	159
Air Pollution.....	160

## Topic C10 — Using Resources

Finite and Renewable Resources.....	161
Reuse and Recycling.....	162
Life Cycle Assessments.....	163
Potable Water.....	164
Waste Water Treatment.....	165
Revision Questions for Topics C9 & C10.....	166

## Topic P1 — Energy

Energy Stores and Systems.....	167
Kinetic and Potential Energy Stores.....	168
Specific Heat Capacity.....	169
Conservation of Energy and Power.....	170
Reducing Unwanted Energy Transfers.....	171
Efficiency.....	172
Energy Resources and Their Uses.....	173
Wind, Solar and Geothermal.....	174
Hydro-electricity, Waves and Tides.....	175
Bio-fuels and Non-renewables.....	176
Trends in Energy Resource Use.....	177
Revision Questions for Topic P1.....	178

## Topic P2 — Electricity

Current and Circuit Symbols.....	179
Resistance and $V = IR$ .....	180
Resistance and $I$ - $V$ Characteristics.....	181
Circuit Devices.....	182
Series Circuits.....	183
Parallel Circuits.....	184
Investigating Resistance.....	185
Electricity in the Home.....	186
Power of Electrical Appliances.....	187
More on Power.....	188
The National Grid.....	189
Revision Questions for Topic P2.....	190

## Topic P3 — Particle Model of Matter

The Particle Model and Motion in Gases.....	191
Density of Materials.....	192
Internal Energy and Changes of State.....	193
Specific Latent Heat.....	194

## Topic P4 — Atomic Structure

Developing the Model of the Atom.....	195
Isotopes and Nuclear Radiation.....	196
Nuclear Equations.....	197
Half-life.....	198
Irradiation and Contamination.....	199
Revision Questions for Topics P3 & P4.....	200



## Topic P5 — Forces

Contact and Non-Contact Forces.....	201
Weight, Mass and Gravity.....	202
Resultant Forces and Work Done.....	203
Calculating Forces.....	204
Forces and Elasticity.....	205
Investigating Springs.....	206
Distance, Displacement, Speed and Velocity.....	207
Acceleration.....	208
Distance-Time and Velocity-Time Graphs.....	209
Terminal Velocity.....	210
Newton's First and Second Laws.....	211
Inertia and Newton's Third Law.....	212
Investigating Motion.....	213
Stopping Distances.....	214
Reaction Times.....	215
Momentum.....	216
Revision Questions for Topic P5.....	217

## Topic P6 — Waves

Transverse and Longitudinal Waves.....	218
Experiments With Waves.....	219
Wave Behaviour and Electromagnetic Waves.....	220
Refraction.....	221
Radio Waves.....	222

EM Waves and Their Uses.....	223
More Uses of EM Waves.....	224
Investigating Infrared Radiation.....	225
Dangers of Electromagnetic Waves.....	226

## Topic P7 — Magnetism and Electromagnetism

Permanent and Induced Magnets.....	227
Electromagnetism.....	228
The Motor Effect.....	229
Electric Motors.....	230
Revision Questions for Topics P6 & P7.....	231

## Practical Skills

Measuring Techniques.....	232
Safety and Ethics.....	235
Setting Up Experiments.....	236
Heating Substances.....	238
Working with Electronics.....	239
Sampling.....	240
Comparing Results.....	241

Answers.....	242
Glossary.....	249
Index.....	264
The Periodic Table and Formula Triangles.....	268

You'll see **QR codes** throughout the book that you can scan with your smartphone.

A QR code next to a tip box question takes you to a **video** that talks you through solving the question. You can access **all** the videos by scanning this code here.



A QR code on a 'Revision Questions' page takes you to a **Retrieval Quiz** for that topic. You can access **all** the quizzes by scanning this code here.



You can also find the **full set of videos** at  
and the **full set of quizzes** at

For useful information about **What to Expect in the Exams** and  
other exam tips head to

Published by CGP.

From original material by Richard Parsons.

Editors: Emma Clayton, Mary Falkner, Katie Fernandez, Emily Garrett, Rob Hayman, Paul Jordin, Duncan Lindsay, Luke Molloy, Sarah Pattison, Joe Shaw, Tamara Sinivassen and George Wright.

Contributors: Michael Bossart and Paddy Gannon.

Pages 161 and 214 contain public sector information licensed under the Open Government Licence v3.0. <http://www.nationalarchives.gov.uk/doc/open-government-licence/version/3/>

With thanks to Lottie Edwards for the copyright research.

Printed by Elanders Ltd, Newcastle upon Tyne.

Clipart from Corel®

Illustrations by: Sandy Gardner Artist, email [sandy@sandygardner.co.uk](mailto:sandy@sandygardner.co.uk)

Text, design, layout and original illustrations © Coordination Group Publications Ltd (CGP) 2021  
All rights reserved.

Photocopying more than one section of this book is not permitted, even if you have a CLA licence.  
Extra copies are available from CGP with next day delivery • 0800 1712 712 • [www.cgpbooks.co.uk](http://www.cgpbooks.co.uk)



# The Scientific Method

This section ish't about how to 'do' science — but it does show you the way most scientists work.

## Scientists Come Up With **Hypotheses** — Then **Test** Them

- 1) Scientists try to **explain** things. They start by **observing** something they don't understand.
- 2) They then come up with a **hypothesis** — a possible **explanation** for what they've observed.
- 3) The next step is to **test** whether the hypothesis might be **right or not**. This involves making a **prediction** based on the hypothesis and testing it by **gathering evidence** (i.e. **data**) from **investigations**. If **evidence** from **experiments** backs up a prediction, you're a step closer to figuring out if the hypothesis is true.



About 100 years ago, scientists hypothesised that atoms looked like this.

## Several Scientists Will **Test** a Hypothesis

- 1) Normally, scientists **share** their **findings** in **peer-reviewed journals**, or at **conferences**.
- 2) **Peer-review** is where **other scientists** check results and scientific explanations to make sure they're 'scientific' (e.g. that experiments have been done in a sensible way) **before** they're published. It helps to **detect false claims**, but it doesn't mean that findings are **correct** — just that they're not wrong in any **obvious** way.
- 3) Once other scientists have found out about a hypothesis, they'll start basing their **own predictions** on it and carry out their **own experiments**. They'll also try to **reproduce** the original experiments to **check the results** — and if all the experiments in the world **back up** the **hypothesis**, then scientists start to think the hypothesis is **true**.
- 4) However, if a scientist does an experiment that **doesn't fit** with the hypothesis (and other scientists can reproduce the results) then the hypothesis may need to be **modified** or **scrapped** altogether.



After more evidence was gathered, scientists changed their hypothesis to this.

## If **All** the **Evidence** Supports a Hypothesis, It's **Accepted** — For Now

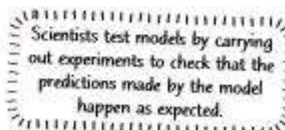
- 1) **Accepted hypotheses** are often referred to as **theories**. Our **currently accepted** theories are the ones that have survived this 'trial by evidence' — they've been **tested many times** over the years and **survived**.
- 2) However, theories **never** become totally indisputable **fact**. If **new evidence** comes along that **can't be explained** using the existing theory, then the hypothesising and testing is likely to **start all over again**.



Now we think it's more like this.

## Theories Can Involve **Different Types** of **Models**

- 1) A **representational model** is a **simplified description** or **picture** of what's going on in real life. Like all models, it can be used to **explain observations** and **make predictions**. E.g. the **Bohr model** of an atom is a simplified way of showing the arrangement of electrons in an atom (see p.103). It can be used to explain trends down groups in the periodic table.
- 2) **Computational models** use computers to make **simulations** of complex real-life processes, such as climate change. They're used when there are a **lot** of different **variables** (factors that change) to consider, and because you can easily **change their design** to take into account **new data**.
- 3) All models have **limitations** on what they can **explain** or **predict**. E.g. **ball and stick models** (a type of spatial model) can be used to show how ions are arranged in an ionic compound. One of their limitations is that they **don't show** the **relative sizes** of the ions (see p.114).



Scientists test models by carrying out experiments to check that the predictions made by the model happen as expected.

## I'm off to the zoo to test my hippo-thesis...

The scientific method has developed over time, and many people have helped to develop it. From Aristotle to modern day scientists, lots of people have contributed. And many more are likely to contribute in the future.



# Communication & Issues Created by Science

Scientific developments can be great, but they can sometimes raise more questions than they answer...

## It's Important to **Communicate** Scientific Discoveries to the **Public**

Some scientific discoveries show that people should change their habits, or they might provide ideas that could be developed into new technology. So scientists need to tell the world about their discoveries.

Gene technologies are used in genetic engineering to produce genetically modified crops. Information about these crops needs to be communicated to farmers who might benefit from growing them and to the general public, so they can make informed decisions about the food they buy and eat.

## Scientific Evidence can be **Presented** in a **Biased Way**

- 1) Reports about scientific discoveries in the media (e.g. newspapers or television) aren't peer-reviewed.
- 2) This means that, even though news stories are often based on data that has been peer-reviewed, the data might be presented in a way that is over-simplified or inaccurate, making it open to misinterpretation.
- 3) People who want to make a point can sometimes present data in a biased way. (Sometimes without knowing they're doing it.) For example, a scientist might overemphasise a relationship in the data, or a newspaper article might describe details of data supporting an idea without giving any evidence against it.

## Scientific Developments are **Great**, but they can **Raise Issues**

Scientific knowledge is increased by doing experiments. And this knowledge leads to scientific developments, e.g. new technologies or new advice. These developments can create issues though. For example:

Economic issues: Society can't always afford to do things scientists recommend (e.g. investing in alternative energy sources) without cutting back elsewhere.

Personal issues: Some decisions will affect individuals. For example, someone might support alternative energy, but object if a wind farm is built next to their house.

Social issues: Decisions based on scientific evidence affect people — e.g. should fossil fuels be taxed more highly? Would the effect on people's lifestyles be acceptable...

Environmental issues: Human activity often affects the natural environment. For example, building a dam to produce electricity will change the local habitat so some species might be displaced. But it will also reduce our need for fossil fuels, so will help to reduce climate change.

## Science **Can't Answer Every Question** — Especially **Ethical Ones**

- 1) We don't understand everything. We're always finding out more, but we'll never know all the answers.
- 2) In order to answer scientific questions, scientists need data to provide evidence for their hypotheses.
- 3) Some questions can't be answered yet because the data can't currently be collected, or because there's not enough data to support a theory.
- 4) Eventually, as we get more evidence, we'll answer some of the questions that currently can't be answered, e.g. what the impact of global warming on sea levels will be. But there will always be the "Should we be doing this at all?"-type questions that experiments can't help us to answer...

Think about new drugs which can be taken to boost your 'brain power'.

- Some people think they're good as they could improve concentration or memory. New drugs could let people think in ways beyond the powers of normal brains.
- Other people say they're bad — they could give you an unfair advantage in exams. And people might be pressured into taking them so that they could work more effectively, and for longer hours.



## Tea to milk or milk to tea? — **Totally unanswerable by science...**

Science can't tell you whether or not you should do something. That's for you and society to decide. But there are tons of questions science might be able to answer, like where life came from and where my superhero socks are.



# Risk

By reading this page you are agreeing to the **risk** of a paper cut or severe drowsiness...

## Nothing is Completely Risk-Free

- 1) A **hazard** is something that could **potentially cause harm**.
- 2) All hazards have a **risk** attached to them — this is the **chance** that the hazard will cause harm.
- 3) The risks of some things seem pretty **obvious**, or we've known about them for a while, like the risk of causing **acid rain** by polluting the atmosphere, or of having a **car accident** when you're travelling in a car.
- 4) **New technology** arising from **scientific advances** can bring **new risks**, e.g. scientists are unsure whether **nanoparticles** that are being used in cosmetics and sunscreen might be harming the cells in our bodies. These risks need to be considered **alongside** the **benefits** of the technology, e.g. improved sun protection.
- 5) You can estimate the **size** of a risk based on **how many times** something happens in a big sample (e.g. 100 000 people) over a given **period** (e.g. a year). For example, you could assess the risk of a driver crashing by recording how many people in a group of 100 000 drivers crashed their cars over a year.
- 6) To make **decisions** about activities that involve **hazards**, we need to take into account the **chance** of the hazard causing harm, and how **serious** the **consequences** would be if it did. If an activity involves a hazard that's **very likely** to cause harm, with **serious consequences** if it does, it's considered **high risk**.

## People Make Their Own Decisions About Risk

- 1) Not all risks have the same **consequences**, e.g. if you chop veg with a sharp knife you risk cutting your finger, but if you go scuba-diving you risk death. You're much **more likely** to cut your finger during half an hour of **chopping** than to die during half an hour of **scuba-diving**. But most people are happier to accept a higher **probability** of an accident if the **consequences** are **short-lived** and fairly **minor**.
- 2) People tend to be more willing to accept a risk if they **choose** to do something (e.g. go scuba diving), compared to having the risk **imposed** on them (e.g. having a nuclear power station built next door).
- 3) People's **perception** of risk (how risky they **think** something is) isn't always **accurate**. They tend to view **familiar** activities as **low-risk** and **unfamiliar** activities as **high-risk** — even if that's not the case. For example, cycling on roads is often **high-risk**, but many people are happy to do it because it's a **familiar** activity. Air travel is actually pretty **safe**, but a lot of people perceive it as **high-risk**.
- 4) People may **underestimate** the risk of things with **long-term** or **invisible** effects, e.g. using tanning beds.

## Investigations Can be Hazardous

- 1) Hazards from science experiments might include:
  - **Microorganisms**, e.g. some bacteria can make you ill.
  - **Chemicals**, e.g. sulfuric acid can burn your skin and alcohols catch fire easily.
  - **Fire**, e.g. an unattended Bunsen burner is a fire hazard.
  - **Electricity**, e.g. faulty electrical equipment could give you a shock.
- 2) Part of planning an investigation is making sure that it's **safe**.
- 3) You should always make sure that you **identify** all the hazards that you might encounter. Then you should think of ways of **reducing the risks** from the hazards you've identified. For example:
  - If you're working with **sulfuric acid**, always wear gloves and safety goggles. This will reduce the risk of the acid coming into contact with your skin and eyes.
  - If you're using a **Bunsen burner**, stand it on a heat proof mat. This will reduce the risk of starting a fire.



You can find out about potential hazards by looking in textbooks, doing some Internet research, or asking your teacher.

## Not revising — an unacceptable exam hazard...

The world's a dangerous place, but if you can recognise hazards, decide how to reduce their risks, and be happy to accept some risks, you can still have fun. Just maybe don't go skydiving with a great white shark on Friday 13th.



# Designing Investigations

Dig out your lab coat and dust down your badly-scratched safety goggles... it's **investigation time**.

## Investigations Produce Evidence to Support or Disprove a Hypothesis

- 1) Scientists **observe** things and come up with **hypotheses** to explain them (see p.1). You need to be able to do the same. For example:  
**Observation:** People have big feet and spots. **Hypothesis:** Having big feet causes spots.
- 2) To **determine** whether or not a hypothesis is **right**, you need to do an **investigation** to gather evidence. To do this, you need to use your hypothesis to make a **prediction** — something you think **will happen** that you can test. E.g. people who have bigger feet will have more spots.
- 3) Investigations are used to see if there are **patterns** or **relationships** between **two variables**, e.g. to see if there's a pattern or relationship between the variables 'number of spots' and 'size of feet'.

## Evidence Needs to be Repeatable, Reproducible and Valid

- 1) **Repeatable** means that if the **same person** does an experiment again using the **same methods** and equipment, they'll get **similar results**.
- 2) **Reproducible** means that if **someone else** does the experiment, or a **different** method or piece of equipment is used, the results will still be **similar**.
- 3) If data is **repeatable** and **reproducible**, it's **reliable** and scientists are more likely to **have confidence** in it.
- 4) **Valid results** are both repeatable and reproducible AND they **answer the original question**. They come from experiments that were designed to be a **FAIR TEST**...



## To Make an Investigation a Fair Test You Have to Control the Variables

- 1) In a lab experiment you usually **change one variable** and **measure** how it affects **another variable**.
- 2) To make it a fair test, **everything else** that could affect the results should **stay the same** — otherwise you can't tell if the thing you're changing is causing the results or not.
- 3) The variable you **CHANGE** is called the **INDEPENDENT** variable.
- 4) The variable you **MEASURE** when you change the independent variable is the **DEPENDENT** variable.
- 5) The variables that you **KEEP THE SAME** are called **CONTROL** variables.

You could find how **temperature** affects the rate of an **enzyme-controlled reaction**. The **independent variable** is the **temperature**. The **dependent variable** is the **rate of reaction**. **Control variables** include the **concentration** and **amounts** of reactants, **pH**, the **time period** you measure, etc.

- 6) Because you can't always control all the variables, you often need to use a **control experiment**. This is an experiment that's kept under the **same conditions** as the rest of the investigation, but **doesn't** have anything **done** to it. This is so that you can see what happens when you don't change anything at all.

## The Bigger the Sample Size the Better

- 1) Data based on **small samples** isn't as good as data based on large samples. A sample should **represent** the **whole population** (i.e. it should share as many of the characteristics in the population as possible) — a small sample can't do that as well. It's also harder to spot **anomalies** if your sample size is too small.
- 2) The **bigger** the sample size the **better**, but scientists have to be **realistic** when choosing how big. For example, if you were studying the effects of **living** near a **nuclear power plant**, it'd be great to study **everyone** who lived near a nuclear power plant (a huge sample), but it'd take ages and cost a bomb. It's more realistic to study a thousand people, with a range of ages, gender, and race.

## This is no high street survey — it's a designer investigation...

Not only do you need to be able to plan your own investigations, you should also be able to look at someone else's plan and decide whether or not it needs improving. Those examiners aren't half demanding.



# Collecting Data

You've designed the perfect investigation — now it's time to get your hands mucky and **collect some data**.

## Your Data Should be Repeatable, Reproducible, Accurate and Precise

- 1) To **check repeatability** you need to **repeat** the readings and check that the results are similar. You need to repeat each reading at least **three times**.
- 2) To make sure your results are **reproducible** you can cross check them by taking a **second set of readings** with **another instrument** (or a **different observer**).
- 3) Your data also needs to be **ACCURATE**. Really accurate results are those that are **really close** to the **true answer**. The accuracy of your results usually depends on your **method** — you need to make sure you're measuring the right thing and that you don't **miss anything** that should be included in the measurements. E.g. estimating the **amount of gas** released from a reaction by **counting the bubbles** isn't very accurate because you might **miss** some of the bubbles and they might have different **volumes**. It's **more accurate** to measure the volume of gas released using a **gas syringe** (see p.232).
- 4) Your data also needs to be **PRECISE**. Precise results are ones where the data is **all really close** to the **mean** (average) of your repeated results (i.e. not spread out).



Beth's result was a curate.

Repeat	Data set 1	Data set 2
1	12	11
2	14	17
3	13	14
Mean	13	14

Data set 1 is more precise than data set 2.

## Your Equipment has to be Right for the Job

- 1) The measuring equipment you use has to be **sensitive enough** to measure the changes you're looking for. For example, if you need to measure changes of  $1 \text{ cm}^3$  you need to use a measuring cylinder or burette that can measure in  $1 \text{ cm}^3$  steps — it'd be no good trying with one that only measures  $10 \text{ cm}^3$  steps.
- 2) The **smallest change** a measuring instrument can **detect** is called its **RESOLUTION**. E.g. some mass balances have a resolution of  $1 \text{ g}$ , some have a resolution of  $0.1 \text{ g}$ , and some are even more sensitive.
- 3) Also, equipment needs to be **calibrated** by measuring a known value. If there's a **difference** between the **measured** and **known value**, you can use this to correct the inaccuracy of the equipment.

## You Need to Look out for Errors and Anomalous Results

- 1) The results of your experiment will always **vary a bit** because of **RANDOM ERRORS** — unpredictable differences caused by things like **human errors** in **measuring**. The errors when you make a reading from a ruler are random. You have to estimate or round the distance when it's between two marks — so sometimes your figure will be a bit above the real one, and sometimes it will be a bit below.
- 2) You can **reduce** the effect of random errors by taking **repeat readings** and finding the **mean**. This will make your results **more precise**.
- 3) If a measurement is wrong by the **same amount every time**, it's called a **SYSTEMATIC ERROR**. For example, if you measured from the very end of your ruler instead of from the  $0 \text{ cm}$  mark every time, all your measurements would be a bit small. Repeating the experiment in the exact same way and calculating a mean **won't** correct a systematic error.
- 4) Just to make things more complicated, if a systematic error is caused by using **equipment** that **isn't zeroed properly**, it's called a **ZERO ERROR**. For example, if a mass balance always reads  $1 \text{ gram}$  before you put anything on it, all your measurements will be  $1 \text{ gram}$  too heavy.
- 5) You can **compensate** for some systematic errors if you know about them though, e.g. if your mass balance always reads  $1 \text{ gram}$  before you put anything on it you can subtract  $1 \text{ gram}$  from all your results.
- 6) Sometimes you get a result that **doesn't fit in** with the rest at all. This is called an **ANOMALOUS RESULT**. You should investigate it and try to **work out what happened**. If you can work out what happened (e.g. you measured something totally wrong) you can **ignore** it when processing your results.

If there's no systematic error, then doing repeats and calculating a mean can make your results more accurate.

## Watch what you say to that mass balance — it's very sensitive...

Weirdly, data can be really precise but not very accurate. For example, a fancy piece of lab equipment might give results that are really precise, but if it's not been calibrated properly those results won't be accurate.



# Processing and Presenting Data

Processing your data means doing some **calculations** with it to make it **more useful**. Once you've done that, you can present your results in a nice **chart** or **graph** to help you **spot any patterns** in your data.

## Data Needs to be Organised

Tables are dead useful for **organising data**. When you draw a table **use a ruler** and make sure **each column** has a **heading** (including the **units**).

## You Might Have to Process Your Data

- 1) When you've done repeats of an experiment you should always calculate the **mean** (a type of average). To do this **add together** all the data values and **divide** by the total number of values in the sample.
- 2) You might also need to calculate the **range** (how spread out the data is). To do this find the **largest** number and **subtract** the **smallest** number from it.

### EXAMPLE

The results of an experiment to find the volume of gas produced in an enzyme-controlled reaction are shown below. Calculate the mean volume and the range.

Repeat 1 (cm <sup>3</sup> )	Repeat 2 (cm <sup>3</sup> )	Repeat 3 (cm <sup>3</sup> )	Mean (cm <sup>3</sup> )	Range (cm <sup>3</sup> )
28	37	32	$(28 + 37 + 32) \div 3 = 32$	$37 - 28 = 9$

Ignore anomalous results when calculating these.

- 3) You might also need to calculate the **median** or **mode** (two more types of average). To calculate the **median**, put all your data in **numerical order** — the median is the **middle value**. The number that appears **most often** in a data set is the **mode**.

E.g. If you have the data set: 1 2 1 1 3 4 2

The **median** is: 1 1 1 2 2 3 4. The **mode** is **1** because 1 appears most often.

If you have an even number of values, the median is halfway between the middle two values.

## Round to the Lowest Number of Significant Figures

The **first significant figure** of a number is the first digit that's **not zero**. The second and third significant figures come **straight after** (even if they're zeros). You should be aware of significant figures in calculations.

- 1) In **any** calculation, you should round the answer to the **lowest number of significant figures** (s.f.) given.
- 2) Remember to write down **how many** significant figures you've rounded to after your answer.
- 3) If your calculation has multiple steps, **only** round the **final** answer, or it won't be as accurate.

### EXAMPLE

The mass of a solid is 0.24 g and its volume is 0.715 cm<sup>3</sup>. Calculate the density of the solid.

$$\text{Density} = \frac{0.24 \text{ g}}{0.715 \text{ cm}^3} = 0.33566... = 0.34 \text{ g/cm}^3 \text{ (2 s.f.)}$$

2 s.f.                      3 s.f.

Final answer should be rounded to 2 s.f.

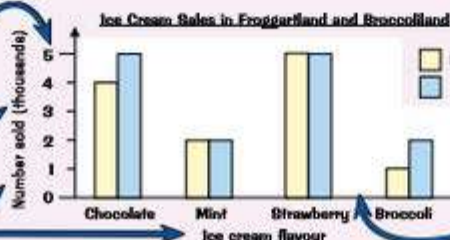
## If Your Data Comes in Categories, Present It in a Bar Chart

- 1) If the independent variable is **categoric** (comes in distinct categories, e.g. flower colour, blood group) you should use a **bar chart** to display the data.
- 2) You also use them if the independent variable is **discrete** (the data can be counted in chunks, where there's no in-between value, e.g. number of protons is discrete because you can't have half a proton).
- 3) There are some **golden rules** you need to follow for **drawing** bar charts:

The scale needs to be **linear** (there should be **equal values** for each division).

Remember to include the **units**.

Label both axes.



Legend:  
■ Froggartland  
■ Broccolliland

If you've got more than one set of data **include a key**.

Draw it nice and **big** (covering at least half of the graph paper).

Leave a **gap between** different categories.



## If Your Data is Continuous, Plot a Graph

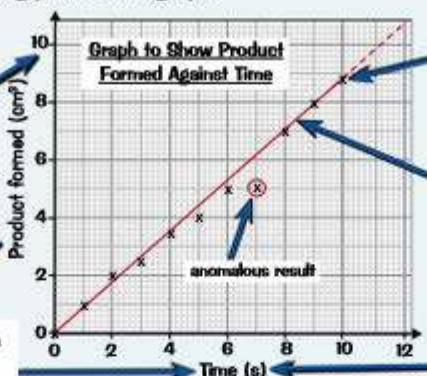
If both variables are **continuous** (numerical data that can have any value within a range, e.g. length, volume, temperature) you should use a **graph** to display the data.

Here are the rules for plotting points on a graph:

Use the biggest data values you've got to draw a **sensible scale** on your axes. Here, the highest amount of product formed is **8.8 cm<sup>3</sup>**, so it makes sense to label the y-axis up to **10 cm<sup>3</sup>**.

The **dependent** variable goes on the **y-axis** (the **vertical** one).

The **independent** variable goes on the **x-axis** (the **horizontal** one).



To plot points, use a sharp pencil and make **neat little crosses** (don't do blobs).



If you're asked to draw a **line** (or **curve**) of **best fit**, draw a line **through** or as **near** to as **many points as possible**, ignoring any **anomalous results**. **Don't** join the crosses up.

Draw it nice and **big** (covering at least half of the graph paper).

Remember to include the **units**.

## Graphs Can Give You a Lot of Information About Your Data

- The **gradient** (slope) of a graph tells you how quickly the **dependent variable** changes if you change the **independent variable**.

$$\text{gradient} = \frac{\text{change in } y}{\text{change in } x}$$

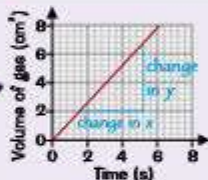
This **graph** shows the **volume of gas** produced in a reaction against **time**. The graph is **linear** (it's a straight line graph), so you can simply calculate the **gradient** of the line to find out the **rate of reaction**.

- To calculate the gradient, pick **two points** on the line that are easy to read and a **good distance** apart.
- Draw a line down** from one of the points and a **line across** from the other to make a **triangle**. The line drawn down the side of the triangle is the **change in y** and the line across the bottom is the **change in x**.

Change in  $y = 6.8 - 2.0 = 4.8 \text{ cm}^3$     Change in  $x = 5.2 - 1.6 = 3.6 \text{ s}$

$$\text{Rate} = \text{gradient} = \frac{\text{change in } y}{\text{change in } x} = \frac{4.8 \text{ cm}^3}{3.6 \text{ s}} = 1.3 \text{ cm}^3/\text{s}$$

The units of the gradient are (units of  $y$ )/(units of  $x$ ).  $\text{cm}^3/\text{s}$  can also be written as  $\text{cm}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$ .



You can use this method to calculate other rates from a graph, not just the rate of a reaction. Just remember that a rate is how much something changes over time, so  $x$  needs to be the time.

- To find the **gradient of a curve** at a **certain point**, draw a **tangent** to the curve at that point and then find the **gradient of the tangent**. See page 146 for details on how to do this.
- The **intercept** of a graph is where the line of best fit crosses one of the **axes**. The **x-intercept** is where the line of best fit crosses the x-axis and the **y-intercept** is where it crosses the y-axis.

## Graphs Show the Relationship Between Two Variables

- You can get **three** types of **correlation** (relationship) between variables:
- Just because there's correlation, it doesn't mean the change in one variable is **causing** the change in the other — there might be **other factors** involved (see page 9).



**POSITIVE correlation:** as one variable **increases** the other **increases**.



**INVERSE (negative) correlation:** as one variable **increases** the other **decreases**.



**NO correlation:** no relationship between the two variables.

## I love eating apples — I call it core elation...

Science is all about finding relationships between things. And I don't mean that scientists gather together in corners to discuss whether or not Devini and Sebastian might be a couple... though they probably do that too.



# Units and Equations

Graphs and maths skills are all very well, but the numbers don't mean much if you can't get the **units** right.

## S.I. Units Are Used All Round the World

- 1) It wouldn't be all that useful if I defined volume in terms of **bath tubs**, you defined it in terms of **egg-cups** and my pal Sarwat defined it in terms of **balloons** — we'd never be able to compare our data.
- 2) To stop this happening, scientists have come up with a set of **standard units**, called **S.I. units**, that all scientists use to measure their data. Here are some S.I. units you'll see in GCSE Science:

Quantity	S.I. Base Unit
mass	kilogram, kg
length	metre, m
time	second, s
amount of a substance	mole, mol
temperature	kelvin, K

## Scaling Prefixes Can Be Used for Large and Small Quantities

- 1) Quantities come in a huge **range** of sizes. For example, the volume of a swimming pool might be around 2 000 000 000 cm<sup>3</sup>, while the volume of a cup is around 250 cm<sup>3</sup>.
- 2) To make the size of numbers more **manageable**, larger or smaller units are used. These are the **S.I. base unit** (e.g. metres) with a **prefix** in front:

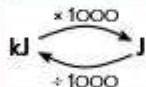
prefix	tera (T)	giga (G)	mega (M)	kilo (k)	deci (d)	centi (c)	milli (m)	micro (μ)	nano (n)
multiple of unit	10 <sup>12</sup>	10 <sup>9</sup>	1 000 000 (10 <sup>6</sup> )	1 000	0.1	0.01	0.001	0.000 001 (10 <sup>-6</sup> )	10 <sup>-9</sup>

- 3) These **prefixes** tell you **how much bigger** or **smaller** a unit is than the base unit. So one **kilometre** is **one thousand** metres.
- 4) To **swap** from one unit to another, all you need to know is what number you have to divide or multiply by to get from the original unit to the new unit — this is called the **conversion factor**.
  - To go from a **bigger unit** (like m) to a **smaller unit** (like cm), you **multiply** by the conversion factor.
  - To go from a **smaller unit** (like g) to a **bigger unit** (like kg), you **divide** by the conversion factor.
- 5) Here are some conversions that'll be useful for GCSE Science:

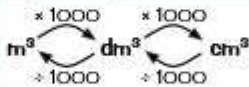
Mass can have units of kg and g.



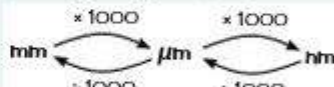
Energy can have units of J and kJ.



Volume can have units of m<sup>3</sup>, dm<sup>3</sup> and cm<sup>3</sup>.



Length can have lots of units, including mm, μm and nm.



## Always Check The Values Used in Equations Have the Right Units

- 1) Formulas and equations show **relationships** between **variables**.
- 2) To **rearrange** an equation, make sure that whatever you do to **one side** of the equation you also do to the **other side**.
- 3) To use a formula, you need to know the values of **all but one** of the variables. **Substitute** the values you do know into the formula, and do the calculation to work out the final variable.
- 4) Always make sure the values you put into an equation or formula have the **right units**. For example, you might have done an experiment to find the speed of a trolley. The distance the trolley travels will probably have been measured in cm, but the equation to find speed uses distance in m. So you'll have to **convert** your distance from cm to m before you put it into the equation.
- 5) To make sure your units are **correct**, it can help to write down the **units** on each line of your **calculation**.

You can find the **speed** of a wave using the equation: wave speed = frequency × wavelength. You can **rearrange** this equation to find the **frequency** by **dividing each side** by wavelength to give: frequency = wave speed ÷ wavelength.

## I wasn't sure I liked units, but now I'm converted...

It's easy to get in a muddle when converting between units, but there's a handy way to check you've done it right. If you're moving from a smaller unit to a larger unit (e.g. g to kg) the number should get smaller, and vice versa.



# Drawing Conclusions

Congratulations — you're nearly at the end of a gruelling investigation, time to draw conclusions.

## You Can **Only Conclude** What the Data Shows and **NO MORE**

- 1) Drawing conclusions might seem pretty straightforward — you just look at your data and say what pattern or relationship you see between the dependent and independent variables.

The table on the right shows the rate of a reaction in the presence of two different catalysts:

Catalyst	Rate of reaction ( $\text{cm}^3/\text{s}$ )
A	13.5
B	19.5
No catalyst	5.5

### CONCLUSION:

Catalyst **B** makes this reaction go faster than catalyst A.

- 2) But you've got to be really careful that your conclusion matches the data you've got and doesn't go any further.  
 You can't conclude that catalyst B increases the rate of any other reaction more than catalyst A — the results might be completely different.
- 3) You also need to be able to use your results to justify your conclusion (i.e. back up your conclusion with some specific data).  
 The rate of this reaction was 6  $\text{cm}^3/\text{s}$  faster using catalyst B compared with catalyst A.
- 4) When writing a conclusion you need to refer back to the original hypothesis and say whether the data supports it or not:  
 The hypothesis for this experiment might have been that catalyst B would make the reaction go quicker than catalyst A. If so, the data supports the hypothesis.

## Correlation **DOES NOT** Mean Cause

If two things are correlated (i.e. there's a relationship between them) it doesn't necessarily mean a change in one variable is causing the change in the other — this is **REALLY IMPORTANT** — **DON'T FORGET IT**. There are three possible reasons for a correlation:

- 1) **CHANCE**: It might seem strange, but two things can show a correlation purely due to chance.

For example, one study might find a correlation between people's hair colour and how good they are at frisbee. But other scientists don't get a correlation when they investigate it — the results of the first study are just a fluke.

- 2) **LINKED BY A 3RD VARIABLE**: A lot of the time it may look as if a change in one variable is causing a change in the other, but it isn't — a third variable links the two things.

For example, there's a correlation between water temperature and shark attacks. This isn't because warmer water makes sharks crazy. Instead, they're linked by a third variable — the number of people swimming (more people swim when the water's hotter, and with more people in the water you get more shark attacks).

- 3) **CAUSE**: Sometimes a change in one variable does cause a change in the other. You can only conclude that a correlation is due to cause when you've controlled all the variables that could, just could, be affecting the result.

For example, there's a correlation between smoking and lung cancer. This is because chemicals in tobacco smoke cause lung cancer. This conclusion was only made once other variables (such as age and exposure to other things that cause cancer) had been controlled and shown not to affect people's risk of getting lung cancer.



## I conclude that this page is a bit dull...

...although, just because I find it dull doesn't mean that I can conclude it's dull (you might think it's the most interesting thing since that kid got his head stuck in the railings near school). In the exams you could be given a conclusion and asked whether some data supports it — so make sure you understand how far conclusions can go.



# Uncertainties and Evaluations

Hurrah! The end of another investigation. Well, now you have to work out all the things you did **wrong**.

## Uncertainty is the Amount of Error Your Measurements Might Have

- When you **repeat** a measurement, you often get a **slightly different** figure each time you do it due to **random error**. This means that **each result** has some **uncertainty** to it.
- The measurements you make will also have some uncertainty in them due to **limits** in the **resolution** of the equipment you use (see page 5).
- This all means that the **mean** of a set of results will also have some uncertainty to it. You can calculate the uncertainty of a **mean result** using the equation:
- The **larger** the range, the **less precise** your results are and the **more uncertainty** there will be in your results. Uncertainties are shown using the ' $\pm$ ' symbol.

The range is the largest value minus the smallest value (p.6).

$$\text{uncertainty} = \frac{\text{range}}{2}$$

### EXAMPLE

The table below shows the results of a respiration experiment to determine the volume of carbon dioxide produced. Calculate the uncertainty of the mean.

Repeat	1	2	3	mean
Volume of $\text{CO}_2$ produced ( $\text{cm}^3$ )	20.1	19.8	20.0	20.0

- First work out the range:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Range} &= 20.1 - 19.8 \\ &= 0.300 \text{ cm}^3\end{aligned}$$

- Use the range to find the uncertainty:

$$\text{Uncertainty} = \text{range} \div 2 = 0.300 \div 2 = 0.150 \text{ cm}^3. \text{ So the uncertainty of the mean} = 20.0 \pm 0.150 \text{ cm}^3$$

- Measuring a **greater amount** of something helps to **reduce uncertainty**. For example, in a rate of reaction experiment, measuring the amount of product formed over a **longer period** compared to a shorter period will **reduce** the **percentage uncertainty** in your results.

## Evaluations — Describe How it Could be Improved

An evaluation is a **critical analysis** of the whole investigation.

- You should comment on the **method** — was it **valid**? Did you control all the other variables to make it a **fair test**?
- Comment on the **quality** of the **results** — was there **enough evidence** to reach a valid **conclusion**? Were the results **repeatable**, **reproducible**, **accurate** and **precise**?
- Were there any **anomalous** results? If there were **none** then **say so**. If there were any, try to **explain** them — were they caused by **errors** in measurement? Were there any other **variables** that could have **affected** the results? You should comment on the level of **uncertainty** in your results too.
- All this analysis will allow you to say how **confident** you are that your conclusion is **right**.
- Then you can suggest any **changes** to the **method** that would **improve** the quality of the results, so that you could have **more confidence** in your conclusion. For example, you might suggest **changing** the way you controlled a variable, or **increasing** the number of **measurements** you took. Taking more measurements at **narrower intervals** could give you a **more accurate result**. For example:



**Enzymes** have an **optimum temperature** (a temperature at which they **work best**). Say you do an experiment to find an enzyme's optimum temperature and take measurements at 10 °C, 20 °C, 30 °C, 40 °C and 50 °C. The results of this experiment tell you the optimum is **40 °C**. You could then **repeat** the experiment, taking **more measurements around 40 °C** to get a **more accurate** value for the optimum.

- You could also make more **predictions** based on your conclusion, then **further experiments** could be carried out to test them.

When suggesting improvements to the investigation, always make sure that you say why you think this would make the results better.

## Evaluation — next time, I'll make sure I don't burn the lab down...

So there you have it — Working Scientifically. Make sure you know this stuff like the back of your hand. It's not just in the lab that you'll need to know how to work scientifically. You can be asked about it in the exams as well.



# Cells

When someone first peered down a microscope at a slice of cork and drew the **boxes** they saw, little did they know that they'd seen the **building blocks** of **every organism on the planet...**

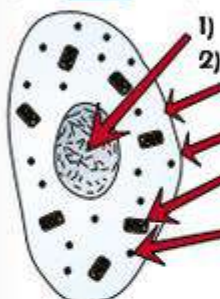
## Organisms can be Prokaryotes or Eukaryotes

- 1) All living things are made of **cells**.
- 2) Cells can be either **prokaryotic** or **eukaryotic**. Eukaryotic cells are **complex** and include all **animal** and **plant** cells. Prokaryotic cells are **smaller** and **simpler**, e.g. bacteria (see below).
- 3) **Eukaryotes** are organisms that are made up of **eukaryotic cells**.
- 4) A **prokaryote** is a **prokaryotic cell** (it's a single-celled organism).

## Plant and Animal Cells have Similarities and Differences

The different parts of a cell are called **subcellular structures**.

Most **animal** cells have the following subcellular structures — make sure you know them all:

- 
- 1) **Nucleus** — contains **genetic material** that controls the activities of the cell.
  - 2) **Cytoplasm** — gel-like substance where most of the **chemical reactions** happen. It contains **enzymes** (see page 25) that control these chemical reactions.
  - 3) **Cell membrane** — holds the cell together and controls what goes **in** and **out**.
  - 4) **Mitochondria** — these are where most of the reactions for **aerobic respiration** take place (see page 55). Respiration transfers **energy** that the cell needs to work.
  - 5) **Ribosomes** — these are where **proteins** are made in the cell.

Plant cells usually have **all the bits** that **animal** cells have, plus a few **extra** things that animal cells **don't** have:

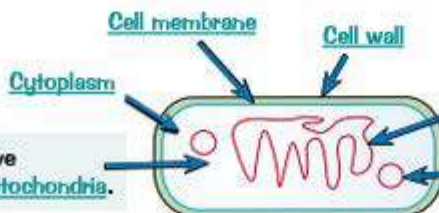
- 1) **Rigid cell wall** — made of **cellulose**. It **supports** the cell and strengthens it.
- 2) **Permanent vacuole** — contains **cell sap**, a weak solution of sugar and salts.
- 3) **Chloroplasts** — these are where **photosynthesis** occurs, which makes food for the plant (see page 50). They contain a **green** substance called **chlorophyll**, which absorbs the **light** needed for photosynthesis.

The cells of algae (e.g. seaweed) also have a rigid cell wall and chloroplasts.

## Bacterial Cells Are Much Smaller

Bacteria are **prokaryotes**. Here's what a bacterial cell might look like:

You might see the sizes of cells written in standard form (see the next page).



Bacterial cells **don't** have a 'true' **nucleus** — instead they have a **single circular strand of DNA** that floats **freely** in the cytoplasm.

Bacteria **don't** have **chloroplasts** or **mitochondria**.

They may also contain one or more small rings of DNA called **plasmids**.

## Cell structures — become an estate agent...

You could get asked to estimate the area of a subcellular structure in your exam. If you do, treat it as a regular shape. For example, if it's close to a rectangle, use the area formula 'area = length × width'.

Q1 Give two differences in structure between prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells.

[2 marks]



# Microscopy

**Microscopes** are pretty important for biology. So here's a couple of pages all about them...

## Cells are Studied Using Microscopes

- 1) **Microscopes** let us see things that we can't see with the naked eye. The microscopy techniques we can use have developed over the years as technology and knowledge have improved.
- 2) **Light microscopes** use light and lenses to form an image of a specimen and magnify it (make it look bigger). They let us see individual cells and large subcellular structures, like nuclei.
- 3) **Electron microscopes** use electrons instead of light to form an image. They have a much higher magnification than light microscopes.
- 4) They also have a higher resolution. (Resolution is the ability to distinguish between two points, so a higher resolution gives a sharper image.)
- 5) Electron microscopes let us see much smaller things in more detail, like the internal structure of mitochondria and chloroplasts. They even let us see tinier things like ribosomes and plasmids.

See the next page for how to use a light microscope.

## You Need to be Able to Use the Formula for Magnification

You can calculate the magnification of an image using this formula:

$$\text{magnification} = \frac{\text{image size}}{\text{real size}}$$

Image size and real size should have the same units. If they don't, you'll need to convert them first (see page 8).

If you want to work out the image size or the real size of the object, you can rearrange the equation using this formula triangle:



Cover up the thing you're trying to find. The parts you can still see are the formula you need to use.

### EXAMPLE

A specimen is 50  $\mu\text{m}$  wide. Calculate the width of the image of the specimen under a magnification of  $\times 100$ . Give your answer in mm.

- 1) Rearrange the formula.
- 2) Fill in the values you know.
- 3) Remember the units in your answer.
- 4) Convert the units.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{image size} &= \text{magnification} \times \text{real size} \\ \text{image size} &= 100 \times 50 \\ &= 5000 \mu\text{m} \\ &= 5 \text{ mm}\end{aligned}$$

Remember, to convert from micrometres ( $\mu\text{m}$ ) to millimetres (mm), you need to divide by 1000 (see p.8).  
E.g.  $5000 \mu\text{m} \div 1000 = 5 \text{ mm}$

## You Need to Know How to Work With Numbers in Standard Form

- 1) Because microscopes can see such tiny objects, sometimes it's useful to write numbers in standard form.
- 2) This is where you change very big or small numbers with lots of zeros into something more manageable, e.g. 0.017 can be written  $1.7 \times 10^{-2}$ .
- 3) To do this you just need to move the decimal point left or right.
- 4) The number of places the decimal point moves is then represented by a power of 10 — this is positive if the decimal point's moved to the left, and negative if it's moved to the right.

### EXAMPLE

A mitochondrion is approximately 0.0025 mm long. Write this figure in standard form.

- 1) The first number needs to be between 1 and 10 so the decimal point needs to move after the '2'.
- 2) Count how many places the decimal point has moved — this is the power of 10. Don't forget the minus sign because the decimal point has moved right.

0.0025

$2.5 \times 10^{-3}$

## Your resolution to revise should be increasing right now...

Keep an eye on the units for that equation — if they're not the same, it just won't work.

- Q1 A cheek cell is viewed under a microscope with  $\times 40$  magnification. The image of the cell is 2.4 mm wide. Calculate the real width of the cheek cell. Give your answer in  $\mu\text{m}$ . [2 marks]



Q1 Video Solution



# More on Microscopy

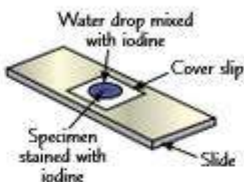
## PRACTICAL

It's all very well knowing what microscopes do — you also have to know how to actually use one.

### You Need to Prepare Your Slide

If you want to look at a specimen (e.g. plant or animal cells) under a light microscope, you need to put it on a **microscope slide** first. A slide is a strip of clear **glass** or **plastic** onto which the specimen is **mounted**. Here's how to prepare a slide to view onion cells:

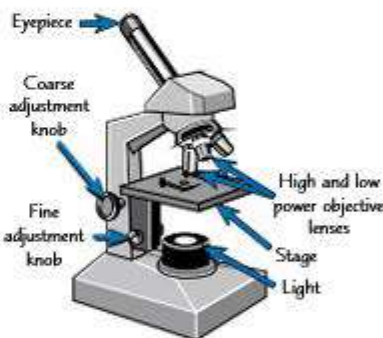
- 1) Add a **drop of water** to the middle of a clean slide.
- 2) Cut up an onion and separate it out into **layers**. Use **tweezers** to peel off some **epidermal tissue** from the bottom of one of the layers.
- 3) Using the tweezers, place the epidermal tissue into the **water** on the slide.
- 4) Add a drop of **iodine solution**. Iodine solution is a **stain**. Stains are used to highlight objects in a cell by adding **colour** to them.
- 5) Place a **cover slip** (a square of thin, transparent plastic or glass) on top. To do this, stand the cover slip **upright** on the slide, **next to** the water droplet. Then carefully **tilt** and **lower** it so it covers the specimen. Try **not** to get any **air bubbles** under there — they'll **obstruct** your view of the specimen.



### Use a Light Microscope to Look at Your Slide

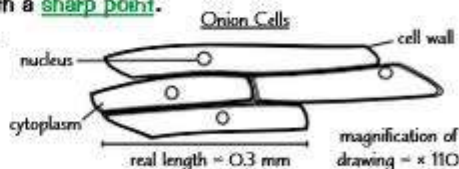
To look at your prepared slides, you need to know how to use a light microscope:

- 1) Clip the **slide** you've prepared onto the **stage**.
- 2) Select the **lowest-powered objective lens** (i.e. the one that produces the lowest magnification).
- 3) Use the **coarse adjustment knob** to move the stage up to just below the objective lens.
- 4) Look down the **eyepiece**. Use the coarse adjustment knob to move the stage downwards until the image is **roughly in focus**.
- 5) Adjust the **focus** with the **fine adjustment knob**, until you get a **clear image** of what's on the slide.
- 6) If you need to see the slide with **greater magnification**, swap to a **higher-powered objective lens** and refocus.



### Draw Your Observations Neatly with a Pencil

- 1) Draw what you see under the microscope using a **pencil** with a **sharp point**.
- 2) Make sure your drawing takes up **at least half** of the space available and that it is drawn with **clear, unbroken lines**.
- 3) Your drawing should not include any **colouring** or **shading**.
- 4) If you are drawing **cells**, the **subcellular structures** should be drawn in **proportion**.
- 5) Remember to include a **title** of what you were observing and write down the **magnification** that it was observed under.
- 6) **Label** the **important features** of your drawing (e.g. nucleus, chloroplasts), using **straight, uncrossed lines**.



You can work out the real size of a cell by counting the number of cells you can see along 1 mm (see p.234). You can work out the magnification of your drawing using this formula:  $\text{magnification} = \frac{\text{length of drawing of cell}}{\text{real length of cell}}$ . So here,  $\text{magnification} = \frac{33 \text{ mm}}{0.3 \text{ mm}} = \times 110$ .

### A light microscope is better than a heavy one...

If you can use a microscope, you're halfway to ruling the world. That's what I like to think, anyway.

Q1 Why might you add stain to the sample on a microscope slide?

[1 mark]

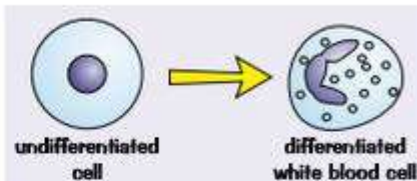


# Cell Differentiation and Specialisation

Cells don't all look the same. They have different structures to suit their different functions.

## Cells Differentiate to Become Specialised

- 1) **Differentiation** is the process by which a cell changes to become specialised for its job.
- 2) As cells change, they develop different subcellular structures and turn into different types of cells. This allows them to carry out specific functions.
- 3) Most differentiation occurs as an organism develops. In most animal cells, the ability to differentiate is then lost at an early stage, after they become specialised. However, lots of plant cells don't ever lose this ability.
- 4) The cells that differentiate in mature animals are mainly used for repairing and replacing cells, such as skin or blood cells.
- 5) Some cells are undifferentiated cells — they're called stem cells. There's more about them on page 16.



## You Need To Know These Examples of Specialised Cells

### SPERM CELLS are specialised for REPRODUCTION

The function of a sperm is basically to get the male DNA to the female DNA. It has a long tail and a streamlined head to help it swim to the egg. There are a lot of mitochondria in the cell to provide the energy needed. It also carries enzymes in its head to digest through the egg cell membrane.

### NERVE CELLS are specialised for RAPID SIGNALLING

The function of nerve cells is to carry electrical signals from one part of the body to another. These cells are long (to cover more distance) and have branched connections at their ends to connect to other nerve cells and form a network throughout the body.

### MUSCLE CELLS are specialised for CONTRACTION

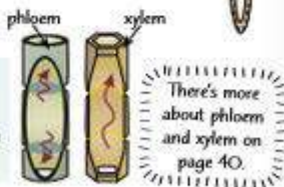
The function of a muscle cell is to contract quickly. These cells are long (so that they have space to contract) and contain lots of mitochondria to generate the energy needed for contraction.

### ROOT HAIR CELLS are specialised for absorbing WATER and MINERALS

Root hair cells are cells on the surface of plant roots, which grow into long "hairs" that stick out into the soil. This gives the plant a big surface area for absorbing water and mineral ions from the soil.

### PHLOEM and XYLEM CELLS are specialised for TRANSPORTING SUBSTANCES

Phloem and xylem cells form phloem and xylem tubes, which transport substances such as food and water around plants. To form the tubes, the cells are long and joined end to end. Xylem cells are hollow in the centre and phloem cells have very few subcellular structures, so that stuff can flow through them.



## Tadpoles and tent pegs — cells are masters of disguise...

You need to know how the structure of each of the cells on this page relates to its function. Lucky you.

- Q1 Plants transport food substances from the leaves to growing parts of the plant through phloem tubes. Give one feature of a phloem cell that makes it specialised for its function. [1 mark]
- Q2 Describe how a root hair cell is specialised for its function. [2 marks]

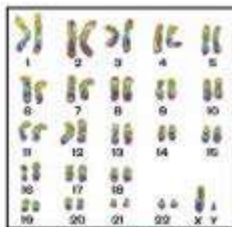


# Chromosomes and Mitosis

In order to survive and grow, our cells have got to be able to **divide**. And that means our DNA as well...

## Chromosomes Contain Genetic Information

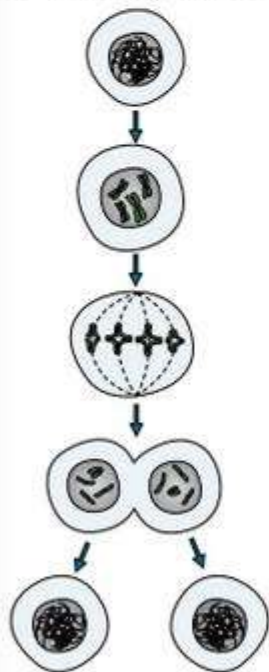
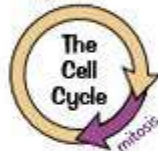
- 1) Most cells in your body have a **nucleus**. The nucleus contains your **genetic material** in the form of **chromosomes**.
- 2) Chromosomes are **coiled up** lengths of **DNA molecules**.
- 3) Each chromosome carries a **large number** of genes. Different genes **control** the development of different **characteristics**, e.g. hair colour.
- 4) **Body cells** normally have **two copies** of each **chromosome** — one from the organism's '**mother**', and one from its '**father**'. So, humans have two copies of chromosome 1, two copies of chromosome 2, etc.
- 5) The diagram shows the **23 pairs of chromosomes** from a human cell.



## The Cell Cycle Makes New Cells for Growth, Development and Repair

- 1) **Body cells** in **multicellular** organisms **divide** to produce new cells as part of a series of stages called the **cell cycle**.
- 2) The stage of the cell cycle when the cell divides is called **mitosis**.
- 3) Multicellular organisms use **mitosis** to **grow** or **replace cells** that have been **damaged**.
- 4) The end of the cell cycle results in two new cells **identical** to the **original** cell, with the **same number** of chromosomes.
- 5) You need to know about these two main stages of the **cell cycle**:

growth and DNA replication



### Growth & DNA Replication

- 1) In a cell that's not dividing, the DNA is all spread out in **long strings**.
- 2) Before it divides, the cell has to **grow** and **increase** the amount of **subcellular structures** such as **mitochondria** and **ribosomes**.
- 3) It then **duplicates** its DNA — so there's one copy for each new cell. The DNA is copied and forms **X-shaped** chromosomes. Each 'arm' of the chromosome is an **exact duplicate** of the other.

The **left arm** has the same DNA as the **right arm** of the chromosome.

### Mitosis

Once its contents and DNA have been copied, the cell is ready for **mitosis**...

- 4) The chromosomes **line up** at the centre of the cell and **cell fibres** pull them apart. The **two arms** of each chromosome go to **opposite ends** of the cell.
- 5) **Membranes** form around each of the sets of chromosomes. These become the **nuclei** of the two new cells — the **nucleus** has **divided**.
- 6) Lastly, the **cytoplasm** and **cell membrane** divide.

The cell has now produced **two new daughter cells**. The daughter cells contain exactly the **same DNA** — they're **identical**. Their DNA is also **identical** to the **parent cell**.

## A cell's favourite computer game — divide and conquer...

Mitosis can seem tricky at first. But don't worry — just go through it slowly, one step at a time.

- Q1 A student looks at cells in the tip of a plant root under a microscope.  
She counts 11 cells that are undergoing mitosis and 62 cells that are not.
- a) Calculate the percentage of cells that are undergoing mitosis.
  - b) Suggest how the student can tell whether a cell is undergoing mitosis or not.

[1 mark]

[1 mark]





# Stem Cells

Stem cell research has exciting possibilities, but it's also pretty controversial.

## Embryonic Stem Cells Can Turn into ANY Type of Cell

- 1) Differentiation is the process by which a cell changes to become specialised for its job — see p.14.
- 2) Undifferentiated cells, called stem cells, can divide to produce lots more undifferentiated cells. They can differentiate into different types of cell, depending on what instructions they're given.
- 3) Stem cells are found in early human embryos. They're exciting to doctors and medical researchers because they have the potential to turn into any kind of cell at all. This makes sense if you think about it — all the different types of cell found in a human being have to come from those few cells in the early embryo.
- 4) Adults also have stem cells, but they're only found in certain places, like bone marrow. Unlike embryonic stem cells, they can't turn into any cell type at all, only certain ones, such as blood cells.
- 5) Stem cells from embryos and bone marrow can be grown in a lab to produce clones (genetically identical cells) and made to differentiate into specialised cells to use in medicine or research.



## Stem Cells May Be Able to Cure Many Diseases

- 1) Medicine already uses adult stem cells to cure disease. For example, stem cells transferred from the bone marrow of a healthy person can replace faulty blood cells in the patient who receives them.
- 2) Embryonic stem cells could also be used to replace faulty cells in sick people — you could make insulin-producing cells for people with diabetes, nerve cells for people paralysed by spinal injuries, and so on.
- 3) In a type of cloning, called therapeutic cloning, an embryo could be made to have the same genetic information as the patient. This means that the stem cells produced from it would also contain the same genes and so wouldn't be rejected by the patient's body if used to replace faulty cells.
- 4) However, there are risks involved in using stem cells in medicine. For example, stem cells grown in the lab may become contaminated with a virus which could be passed on to the patient and so make them sicker.

## Some People Are Against Stem Cell Research

- 1) Some people are against stem cell research because they feel that human embryos shouldn't be used for experiments since each one is a potential human life.
- 2) Others think that curing existing patients who are suffering is more important than the rights of embryos.
- 3) They argue that the embryos used in the research are usually unwanted ones from fertility clinics which, if they weren't used for research, would probably just be destroyed.
- 4) However, campaigners for the rights of embryos feel that scientists should concentrate more on finding and developing other sources of stem cells, so people could be helped without having to use embryos.
- 5) In some countries stem cell research is banned. It's allowed in the UK as long as it follows strict guidelines.

## Stem Cells Can Produce Identical Plants

- 1) In plants, stem cells are found in the meristems (parts of the plant where growth occurs — see p.39).
- 2) Throughout the plant's entire life, cells in the meristem tissues can differentiate into any type of plant cell.
  - These stem cells can be used to produce clones (identical copies) of whole plants quickly and cheaply.
  - They can be used to grow more plants of rare species (to prevent them being wiped out).
  - Stem cells can also be used to grow crops of identical plants that have desired features for farmers, for example, disease resistance.

## But florists cell stems, and nobody complains about that...

Whatever your opinion is, make sure you know the uses of stem cells and the arguments for and against using them.

Q1 How can stem cells be used to preserve rare plant species?

[2 marks]



# Diffusion

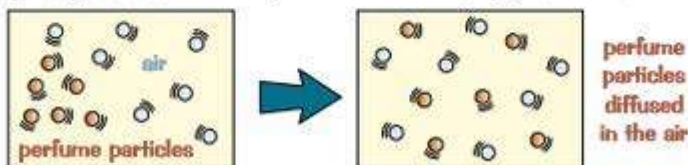
Particles move about randomly, and after a bit they end up evenly spaced. It's not rocket science, is it...

## Don't Be Put Off by the Fancy Word

- 1) "Diffusion" is simple. It's just the gradual movement of particles from places where there are lots of them to places where there are fewer of them — it's just the natural tendency for stuff to spread out.
- 2) Unfortunately you also have to learn the fancy way of saying the same thing, which is this:

**DIFFUSION is the SPREADING OUT of particles from an area of HIGHER CONCENTRATION to an area of LOWER CONCENTRATION.**

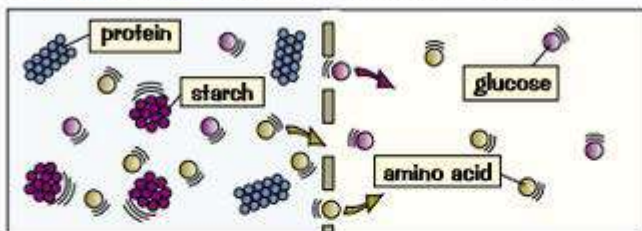
- 3) Diffusion happens in both solutions and gases — that's because the particles in these substances are free to move about randomly.
- 4) The simplest type is when different gases diffuse through each other.  
This is what's happening when the smell of perfume diffuses through the air in a room:



- 5) The bigger the concentration gradient (the difference in concentration), the faster the diffusion rate.
- 6) A higher temperature will also give a faster diffusion rate because the particles have more energy, so move around faster.

## Cell Membranes Are Kind of Clever...

- 1) They're clever because they hold the cell together BUT they let stuff in and out as well.
- 2) Dissolved substances can move in and out of cells by diffusion.
- 3) Only very small molecules can diffuse through cell membranes though — things like oxygen (needed for respiration — see page 55), glucose, amino acids and water.
- 4) Big molecules like starch and proteins can't fit through the membrane:



- 5) Just like with diffusion in air, particles flow through the cell membrane from where there's a higher concentration (a lot of them) to where there's a lower concentration (not such a lot of them).
- 6) They're only moving about randomly of course, so they go both ways — but if there are a lot more particles on one side of the membrane, there's a net (overall) movement from that side.
- 7) The larger the surface area of the membrane, the faster the diffusion rate, because more particles can pass through at once — see page 20.

## Revision by diffusion — you wish...

Wouldn't it be great if all the ideas in this book would just gradually drift across into your mind...

Q1 A student adds a drop of ink to a glass of cold water.

- a) What will the student observe to happen to the drop of ink. Explain your answer. [2 marks]
- b) How might the observation differ if the ink was added to a glass of warm water? [1 mark]





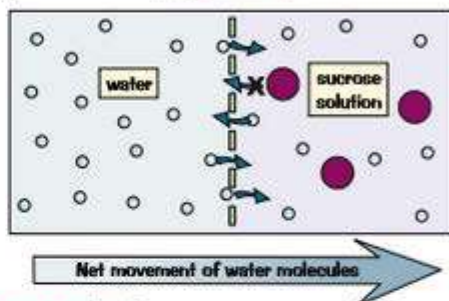
# Osmosis

If you've got your head round diffusion, osmosis will be a breeze. If not, have another read of the previous page.

## Osmosis is a Special Case of Diffusion, That's All

**OSMOSIS** is the movement of water molecules across a partially permeable membrane from a region of higher water concentration to a region of lower water concentration.

- 1) A partially permeable membrane is just one with very small holes in it. So small, in fact, only tiny molecules (like water) can pass through them, and bigger molecules (e.g. sucrose) can't.
- 2) The water molecules actually pass both ways through the membrane during osmosis. This happens because water molecules move about randomly all the time.
- 3) But because there are more water molecules on one side than on the other, there's a steady net flow of water into the region with fewer water molecules, i.e. into the stronger sugar solution.
- 4) This means the strong sugar solution gets more dilute. The water acts like it's trying to "even up" the concentration either side of the membrane.
- 5) Osmosis is a type of diffusion — passive movement of water particles from an area of higher water concentration to an area of lower water concentration.

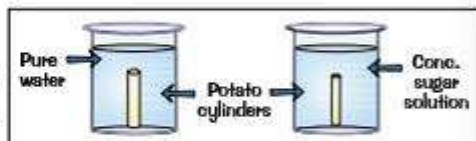


## You can Observe the Effect of Sugar Solutions on Plant Tissue

**PRACTICAL**

There's a fairly dull experiment you can do to show osmosis at work.

- 1) You cut up an innocent potato into identical cylinders, and get some beakers with different sugar solutions in them. One should be pure water and another should be a very concentrated sugar solution (e.g.  $1 \text{ mol/dm}^3$ ). Then you can have a few others with concentrations in between (e.g.  $0.2 \text{ mol/dm}^3$ ,  $0.4 \text{ mol/dm}^3$ ,  $0.6 \text{ mol/dm}^3$ , etc.)
- 2) You measure the mass of the cylinders, then leave one cylinder in each beaker for twenty four hours or so.
- 3) Then you take them out, dry them with a paper towel and measure their masses again.
- 4) If the cylinders have drawn in water by osmosis, they'll have increased in mass. If water has been drawn out, they'll have decreased in mass. You can calculate the percentage change in mass, then plot a few graphs and things.
- 5) The dependent variable is the chip mass and the independent variable is the concentration of the sugar solution. All other variables (volume of solution, temperature, time, type of sugar used, etc. etc.) must be kept the same in each case or the experiment won't be a fair test.
- 6) Like any experiment, you need to be aware of how errors (see p.5) may arise. Sometimes they may occur when carrying out the method, e.g. if some potato cylinders were not fully dried, the excess water would give a higher mass, or if water evaporated from the beakers, the concentrations of the sugar solutions would change. You can reduce the effect of these errors by repeating the experiment and calculating a mean percentage change at each concentration.



By calculating the percentage change (see p.241), you can compare the effect of sugar concentration on cylinders that didn't have the same initial mass. An increase in mass will give a positive percentage change and a decrease will give a negative percentage change.

You could also carry out this experiment using different salt solutions and see what effect they have on potato chip mass.

## And to all you cold-hearted potato murderers...

Just remember, osmosis is really just a fancy word for the diffusion of water molecules. It's simple really.

- Q1 Explain what will happen to the mass of a piece of potato added to a concentrated salt solution.

[2 marks]



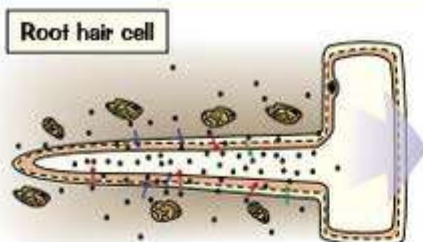
Q1 Video Solution



# Active Transport

Sometimes substances need to be absorbed against a concentration gradient, i.e. from a lower to a higher concentration. This process is lovingly referred to as **ACTIVE TRANSPORT**.

## Root Hairs Take In Minerals and Water



- 1) As you saw on page 14, the cells on plant roots grow into "hairs" which stick out into the soil.
- 2) Each branch of a root will be covered in **millions** of these microscopic hairs.
- 3) This gives the plant a **large surface area** for absorbing **water** and **mineral ions** from the soil.
- 4) Plants **need** these mineral ions for **healthy growth**.
- 5) The concentration of minerals is usually **higher** in the **root hair** cells than in the **soil** around them.

6) So the root hair cells **can't** use **diffusion** to take up minerals from the soil.

## Root Hairs Take in Minerals Using Active Transport

- 1) Minerals should move **out** of the root hairs if they followed the rules of diffusion. The cells must use another method to draw them in.
- 2) That method is, in fact, a conveniently mysterious process called "**active transport**".
- 3) Active transport allows the plant to absorb minerals from a very **dilute** solution, **against** a concentration gradient. This is essential for its growth. But active transport needs **ENERGY** from **respiration** to make it work.
- 4) Active transport also happens in **humans**, for example in taking **glucose** from the **gut** (see below), and from the **kidney tubules**.

Water is taken into root hair cells by osmosis (see page 18).

## We Need Active Transport to Stop Us Starving

**Active transport** is used in the gut when there is a **lower concentration** of nutrients in the **gut**, but a **higher concentration** of nutrients in the **blood**.

- 1) When there's a **higher concentration** of glucose and amino acids in the gut they **diffuse naturally** into the blood.
- 2) **BUT** — sometimes there's a **lower concentration** of nutrients in the gut than there is in the blood.
- 3) This means that the **concentration gradient** is the wrong way.
- 4) The same process used in plant roots is used here...  
..."**Active transport**".
- 5) Active transport allows nutrients to be taken into the blood, despite the fact that the **concentration gradient** is the wrong way.
- 6) This means that **glucose** can be taken into the bloodstream when its concentration in the blood is already **higher** than in the gut. It can then be transported to cells, where it's used for **respiration** (see p.54).



## Active transport — get on yer bike...

An important difference between active transport and diffusion is that active transport uses energy. Imagine a pen of sheep in a field. If you open the pen, the sheep will happily diffuse from the area of higher sheep concentration into the field, which has a lower sheep concentration — you won't have to do a thing. To get them back in the pen though, you'll have to put in quite a bit of energy.

Q1 What is the purpose of active transport in the gut?

[1 mark]



# Exchange Surfaces

How easily stuff **moves** between an **organism** and its **environment** depends on its **surface area to volume ratio**.

## Organisms Exchange Substances with their Environment

- Cells can use **diffusion** to **take in** substances they **need** and **get rid of** **waste products**. For example:
  - Oxygen** and **carbon dioxide** are transferred between **cells** and the **environment** during **gas exchange**.
  - In humans, **urea** (a waste product produced from the breakdown of proteins) diffuses from **cells** into the **blood plasma** for removal from the body by the kidneys.
- How **easy** it is for an organism to exchange substances with its environment depends on the organism's **surface area to volume ratio (SA : V)**.

## You Can Compare Surface Area to Volume Ratios

A ratio shows **how big** one value is **compared** to another. The **larger** an organism is, the **smaller** its surface area is compared to its volume. You can show this by calculating **surface area to volume ratios**:

A hippo can be represented by a  $2\text{ cm} \times 4\text{ cm} \times 4\text{ cm}$  block.

The area of a surface is found by the equation: **LENGTH  $\times$  WIDTH**

So the hippo's total **surface area** is:

$$\begin{aligned} & (4 \times 4) \times 2 \text{ (top and bottom surfaces of block)} \\ & + (4 \times 2) \times 4 \text{ (four sides of the block)} \\ & = 64\text{ cm}^2. \end{aligned}$$

The volume of a block is found by the equation: **LENGTH  $\times$  WIDTH  $\times$  HEIGHT**

So the hippo's **volume** is  $4 \times 4 \times 2 = 32\text{ cm}^3$ .

The surface area to volume ratio of the hippo can be written as **64 : 32**.

To **simplify** the ratio, **divide both sides** of the ratio by the **volume**.

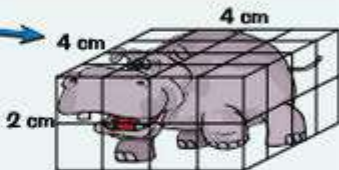
So the surface area to volume ratio of the hippo is **2 : 1**.

A mouse can be represented by a  $1\text{ cm} \times 1\text{ cm} \times 1\text{ cm}$  block.

Its **surface area** is  $(1 \times 1) \times 6 = 6\text{ cm}^2$ .

Its **volume** is  $1 \times 1 \times 1 = 1\text{ cm}^3$ .

So the surface area to volume ratio of the mouse is **6 : 1**.



The cube mouse's surface area is **six** times its volume, but the cube hippo's surface area is only **twice** its volume. So the **mouse** has a **larger** surface area compared to its volume.



## Multicellular Organisms Need Exchange Surfaces

- In **single-celled organisms**, gases and dissolved substances can diffuse **directly into** (or out of) the cell across the cell membrane. It's because they have a **large surface area** compared to their **volume**, so **enough substances** can be exchanged across the membrane to supply the volume of the cell.
- Multicellular organisms** have a **smaller surface area** compared to their **volume** — **not enough** substances can diffuse from their outside surface to supply their entire volume. This means they need some sort of **exchange surface** for efficient diffusion (see pages 21-22 for some examples). The exchange surface structures have to allow **enough** of the necessary substances to pass through.
- Exchange surfaces are **ADAPTED** to maximise effectiveness:
  - They have a **thin membrane**, so substances only have a **short distance** to **diffuse**.
  - They have a **large surface area** so **lots** of a substance can **diffuse** at once.
  - Exchange surfaces in **animals** have **lots of blood vessels**, to get stuff into and out of the blood quickly.
  - Gas exchange surfaces** in animals (e.g. alveoli) are often **ventilated** too — air moves in and out.

## Not that I'm endorsing putting animals in boxes...

A large surface area is a key way that organisms' exchange surfaces are made more effective.

Q1 A bacterial cell can be represented by a  $2\text{ }\mu\text{m} \times 2\text{ }\mu\text{m} \times 1\text{ }\mu\text{m}$  block.

Calculate the cell's surface area to volume ratio.

[3 marks]



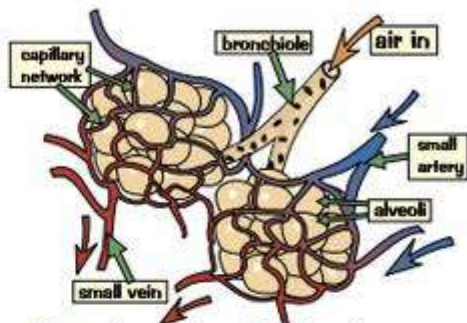


# Exchanging Substances

This page is about how two different parts of the human body are **adapted** so that substances can diffuse through them **most effectively**. The first bit is about how **gases** in the lungs get **into and out of the blood**. The second is about how **digested food** gets from the **gut to the blood**.

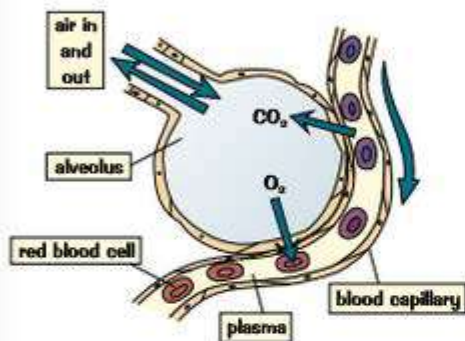
## Gas Exchange Happens in the Lungs

- 1) The job of the lungs is to transfer **oxygen** to the **blood** and to remove **waste carbon dioxide** from it.
- 2) To do this the lungs contain millions of little air sacs called **alveoli** where **gas exchange** takes place.



Blue = blood with carbon dioxide.

Red = blood with oxygen.

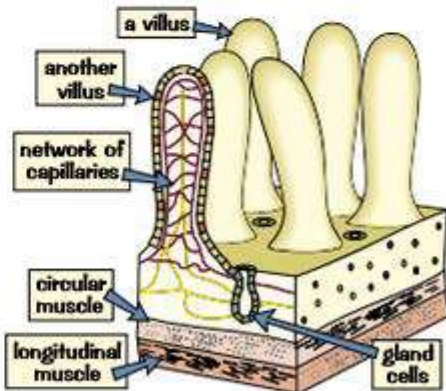
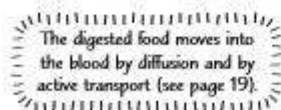


- 3) The alveoli are specialised to maximise the **diffusion** of  $O_2$  and  $CO_2$ . They have:

- An **enormous** surface area (about  $75\text{ m}^2$  in humans).
- A **moist lining** for dissolving gases.
- Very **thin walls**.
- A **good blood supply**.

## The Villi Provide a Really Really Big Surface Area

- 1) The inside of the **small intestine** is covered in millions and millions of these tiny little projections called **villi**.
- 2) They increase the surface area in a big way so that digested food is **absorbed** much more quickly into the **blood**.
- 3) Notice they have:
  - a **single** layer of surface cells,
  - a very good **blood supply** to assist **quick absorption**.



## Al Veoli — the Italian gas man...

Thankfully, our bodies are well adapted for efficient diffusion of substances. But the array of life's snazzy exchange surfaces doesn't stop here, oh no — just take a look at what's coming up on the next page...

Q1 Give one way in which alveoli are adapted for gas exchange.

[1 mark]

Q2 Coeliac disease causes inflammation of the small intestine, which can damage the villi.

Suggest why a person with coeliac disease might have low levels of iron in their blood. [2 marks]



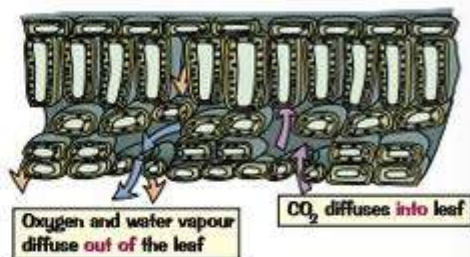


## More on Exchanging Substances

More stuff on adaptations for diffusion now — only this time, it's **plants** and **fish**. Whoopee...

### The Structure of Leaves Lets Gases Diffuse In and Out of Cells

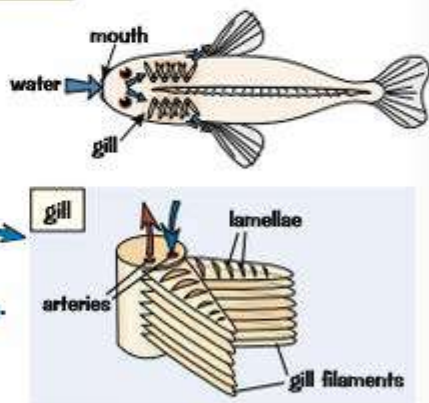
- 1) Carbon dioxide **diffuses into the air spaces** within the leaf, then it **diffuses into the cells** where photosynthesis happens. The leaf's structure is **adapted** so that this can happen easily.
- 2) The underneath of the leaf is an **exchange surface**. It's covered in little holes called **stomata** which the carbon dioxide diffuses in through.
- 3) **Oxygen** (produced in photosynthesis) and **water vapour** also **diffuse out** through the stomata. (Water vapour is actually lost from all over the leaf surface, but most of it is lost through the stomata.)
- 4) The size of the stomata are controlled by **guard cells** — see page 41. These **close** the stomata if the plant is losing water faster than it is being replaced by the roots. Without these guard cells the plant would soon **wilt**.
- 5) The **flattened shape** of the leaf increases the **area** of this exchange surface so that it's more effective.
- 6) The **walls of the cells** inside the leaf form another exchange surface. The **air spaces** inside the leaf increase the **area** of this surface so there's more chance for carbon dioxide to get into the cells.



The water vapour **evaporates** from the cells inside the leaf. Then it escapes by **diffusion** because there's a lot of it **inside** the leaf and less of it in the **air outside**.

### Gills Have a Large Surface Area for Gas Exchange

- 1) The **gills** are the gas exchange surface in **fish**.
- 2) Water (containing **oxygen**) enters the fish through its **mouth** and passes out through the **gills**. As this happens, **oxygen** diffuses from the water into the blood in the gills and **carbon dioxide** diffuses from the blood into the water.
- 3) Each gill is made of lots of thin plates called **gill filaments**, which give a **big surface area** for **exchange of gases**.
- 4) The gill filaments are covered in lots of tiny structures called **lamellae**, which **increase** the **surface area** even more.
- 5) The lamellae have **lots of blood capillaries** to **speed up diffusion**.
- 6) They also have a **thin surface layer** of cells to **minimise** the **distance** that the gases have to diffuse.
- 7) **Blood** flows through the lamellae in one direction and **water** flows over in the opposite direction. This maintains a **large concentration gradient** between the water and the blood.
- 8) The **concentration of oxygen** in the **water** is always **higher** than that in the **blood**, so as much oxygen as possible diffuses from the water into the blood.



### In, out, in, out, shake that oxygen about...

There's a theme here — multicellular organisms are really well adapted for getting the substances they need to their cells. It makes sense — if they couldn't do this well, they'd die out. If you're asked in an exam how something's adapted for exchange, think about whether surface area is important — cos it often is.

Q1 Give two ways in which the structure of a gill is adapted for effective gas exchange.

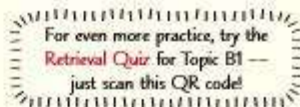
[2 marks]



# Revision Questions for Topic B1

Well, that's **Topic B1** done and dusted. Now there's only one way to find out whether you've learnt anything from it. And yes, I'm afraid it involves that whole load of questions staring you in the face.

- Try these questions and **tick off each one** when you **get it right**.
- When you're **completely happy** with a sub-topic, tick it off.



## Cells and Microscopy (p.11-13) ☐

- 1) Name five subcellular structures that both plant and animal cells have. ☐
- 2) What three things do plant cells have that animal cells don't? ☐
- 3) Where is the genetic material found in:
  - a) animal cells, ☐
  - b) bacterial cells? ☐
- 4) What type of organisms are bacteria — prokaryotes or eukaryotes? ☐
- 5) Which gives a higher resolution — a light microscope or an electron microscope? ☐

## Differentiation and Division (p.14-15) ☐

- 6) What is cell differentiation? ☐
- 7) Give three ways that a sperm cell is adapted for swimming to an egg cell. ☐
- 8) Draw a diagram of a nerve cell. Why is it this shape? ☐
- 9) What are chromosomes? ☐
- 10) What is the cell cycle? ☐
- 11) What is mitosis used for by multicellular organisms? ☐

## Stem Cells (p.16) ☐

- 12) Give two ways that embryonic stem cells could be used to cure diseases. ☐
- 13) Why might some people be opposed to the use of human embryos in stem cell research? ☐

## Exchanging Substances (p.17-22) ☐

- 14) What is diffusion? ☐
- 15) Name three substances that can diffuse through cell membranes, and two that can't. ☐
- 16) What type of molecules move by osmosis? ☐
- 17) Give the two main differences between active transport and diffusion. ☐
- 18) Give three adaptations of exchange surfaces that increase the efficiency of diffusion. ☐
- 19) Give two ways that the villi in the small intestine are adapted for absorbing digested food. ☐
- 20) Explain how leaves are adapted to maximise the amount of carbon dioxide that gets to their cells. ☐



# Cell Organisation

Some organisms contain loads of **cells**, but how, you might wonder, do all these cells end up making a working human or squirrel... the answer's **organisation**. Without it, they'd just make a meaty splodge.

## Large Multicellular Organisms are Made Up of Organ Systems

- 1) **Cells** are the **basic building blocks** that make up **all living organisms**.
- 2) As you know from page 14, **specialised cells** carry out a **particular function**.
- 3) The **process** by which cells become specialised for a particular job is called **differentiation**. Differentiation occurs during the **development** of a multicellular organism.
- 4) These specialised cells form **tissues**, which form **organs**, which form **organ systems** (see below).
- 5) **Large multicellular organisms** (e.g. squirrels) have different **systems** inside them for **exchanging** and **transporting** materials.

## Similar Cells are Organised into Tissues

A **tissue** is a **group** of **similar cells** that work together to carry out a particular **function**. It can include **more than one type** of cell.

In **mammals** (like humans), examples of tissues include:

- 1) **Muscular tissue**, which **contracts** (shortens) to **move** whatever it's attached to.
- 2) **Glandular tissue**, which **makes** and **secretes** chemicals like **enzymes** and **hormones**.
- 3) **Epithelial tissue**, which **covers** some parts of the body, e.g. the **inside** of the **gut**.

## Tissues are Organised into Organs

An **organ** is a group of **different tissues** that work together to perform a certain **function**.

For example, the **stomach** is an organ made of these tissues:

- 1) **Muscular tissue**, which moves the stomach wall to **churn up the food**.
- 2) **Glandular tissue**, which makes **digestive juices** to digest food.
- 3) **Epithelial tissue**, which covers the **outside** and **inside** of the stomach.

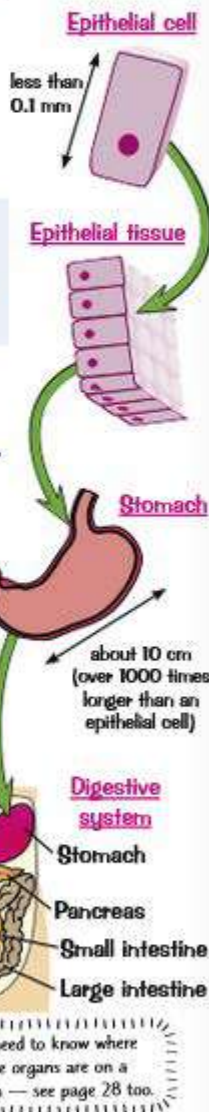
## Organs are Organised into Organ Systems

An **organ system** is a **group of organs** working together to perform a particular **function**.

For example, the **digestive system** (found in humans and other mammals) **breaks down** and **absorbs** food. It's made up of these organs:

- 1) **Glands** (e.g. the **pancreas** and **salivary glands**), which produce **digestive juices**.
- 2) The **stomach** and **small intestine**, which **digest** food.
- 3) The **liver**, which produces **bile**.
- 4) The **small intestine**, which **absorbs** soluble **food** molecules.
- 5) The **large intestine**, which **absorbs water** from undigested food, leaving **faeces**.

Organ systems work together to make entire **organisms**.



## Soft and quilted — the best kind of tissues...

So in summary, an organism consists of organ systems, which are groups of organs, which are made of tissues, which are groups of cells working together. Now just for the thrill of it, here's a practice question.

Q1 The bladder is an organ. Explain what this means.

[2 marks]



# Enzymes

**Chemical reactions** are what make you work. And **enzymes** are what make them work.

## Enzymes Are Catalysts Produced by Living Things

- 1) **Living things** have thousands of different **chemical reactions** going on inside them all the time. These reactions need to be **carefully controlled** — to get the **right** amounts of substances.
- 2) You can usually make a reaction happen more quickly by **raising the temperature**. This would speed up the useful reactions but also the unwanted ones too... not good. There's also a **limit** to how far you can raise the temperature inside a living creature before its **cells** start getting **damaged**.
- 3) So... living things produce **enzymes** that act as **biological catalysts**. Enzymes reduce the need for high temperatures and we **only** have enzymes to speed up the **useful chemical reactions** in the body.

A **CATALYST** is a substance which **INCREASES** the speed of a reaction, without being **CHANGED** or **USED UP** in the reaction.

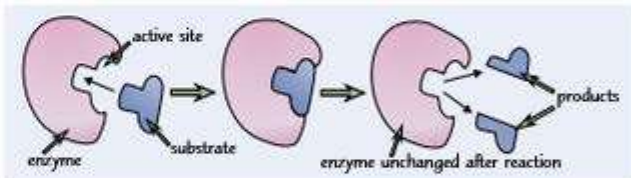
- 4) Enzymes are all **large proteins** and all proteins are made up of **chains** of **amino acids**. These chains are folded into **unique shapes**, which enzymes need to do their jobs (see below).

## Enzymes Have Special Shapes So They Can Catalyse Reactions

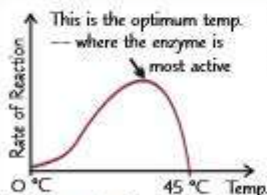
- 1) **Chemical reactions** usually involve things either being **split apart** or **joined together**.
- 2) **Every** enzyme has an **active site** with a unique shape that **fits** onto the substance involved in a reaction.
- 3) Enzymes are really **picky** — they usually only catalyse **one specific reaction**.
- 4) This is because, for the enzyme to work, the substrate has to **fit** into its active site. If the substrate doesn't **match** the enzyme's active site, then the reaction **won't** be catalysed.

The substance that an enzyme acts on is called the substrate.

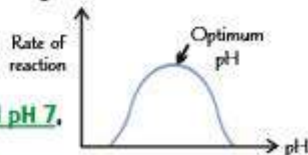
- 5) This diagram shows the **'lock and key' model** of enzyme action. This is **simpler** than how enzymes actually work. In reality, the active site **changes shape** a little as the substrate binds to it to get a **tighter fit**. This is called the **'induced fit'** model of enzyme action.



## Enzymes Need the Right Temperature and pH



- 1) Changing the **temperature** changes the **rate** of an enzyme-catalysed reaction.
- 2) Like with any reaction, a higher temperature **increases** the rate at first. But if it gets **too hot**, some of the **bonds** holding the enzyme together **break**. This changes the shape of the enzyme's **active site**, so the substrate **won't fit** any more. The enzyme is said to be **denatured**.
- 3) All enzymes have an **optimum temperature** that they work best at.
- 4) The **pH** also affects enzymes. If it's too high or too low, the pH interferes with the **bonds** holding the enzyme together. This changes the **shape** of the **active site** and **denatures** the enzyme.
- 5) All enzymes have an **optimum pH** that they work best at. It's often **neutral pH 7**, but **not always** — e.g. **pepsin** is an enzyme used to break down **proteins** in the **stomach**. It works best at **pH 2**, which means it's well-suited to the **acidic conditions** there.



## If only enzymes could speed up revision...

Make sure you use the special terms like 'active site' and 'denatured' — the examiners will love it.

Q1 Explain why enzymes have an optimum pH.

[2 marks]



# Investigating Enzymatic Reactions

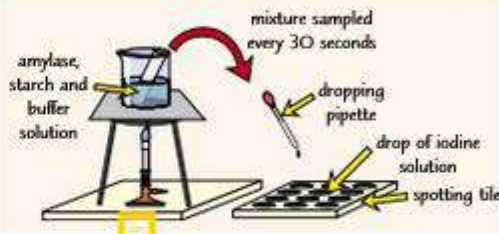
You'll soon know how to investigate the effect of **pH** on the rate of **enzyme activity**... I bet you're thrilled.

## You Can Investigate the Effect of pH on Enzyme Activity

**PRACTICAL**

The enzyme **amylase** catalyses the breakdown of **starch** to **maltose**. It's easy to **detect starch** using **iodine solution** — if starch is present, the iodine solution will change from **brownish-orange** to **blue-black**. This is how you can **investigate** how pH affects **amylase activity**:

- 1) Put a **drop** of iodine solution into every well of a **spotting tile**.
- 2) Place a **Bunsen burner** on a **heat-proof mat**, and a **tripod** and **gauze** over the Bunsen burner. Put a beaker of **water** on top of the tripod and **heat** the water until it is **35 °C** (use a **thermometer** to measure the temperature). Try to keep the temperature of the water **constant** throughout the experiment.
- 3) Use a **syringe** to add **1 cm<sup>3</sup>** of **amylase solution** and **1 cm<sup>3</sup>** of a **buffer solution** with a pH of 5 to a boiling tube. Using **test tube holders**, put the tube into the beaker of water and wait for five minutes.
- 4) Next, use a **different syringe** to add **5 cm<sup>3</sup>** of a **starch solution** to the boiling tube.
- 5) Immediately **mix the contents** of the boiling tube and start a **stop clock**.
- 6) Use **continuous sampling** to record **how long** it takes for the amylase to break down all of the starch. To do this, use a dropping pipette to take a **fresh sample** from the boiling tube **every 30 seconds** and put a **drop** into a **well**. When the iodine solution **remains brownish-orange**, starch is no longer present.
- 7) **Repeat** the whole experiment with buffer solutions of different **pH values** to see how pH **affects** the time taken for the starch to be broken down.
- 8) Remember to **control any variables** each time (e.g. concentration and volume of amylase solution) to make it a **fair test**.



You could use an electric water bath, instead of a Bunsen and a beaker of water, to control the temperature.

You could use a pH meter to accurately measure the pH of your solutions.

## Here's How to Calculate the Rate of Reaction

- 1) It's often useful to calculate the **rate of reaction** after an experiment. Rate is a measure of how much something changes over time.
- 2) For the **experiment above**, you can calculate the rate of reaction using **this formula**:  
E.g. At **pH 6**, the **time taken** for amylase to break down all of the starch in a solution was **90 seconds**. So the **rate** of the reaction =  $1000 \div 90 = 11 \text{ s}^{-1}$  (2 s.f.)
- 3) If an experiment measures **how much something changes** over time, you calculate the rate of reaction by **dividing** the **amount** that it has **changed** by the **time taken**.

$$\text{Rate} = \frac{1000}{\text{time}}$$

The units are in  $\text{s}^{-1}$  since rate is given per unit time.

### EXAMPLE

The enzyme catalase catalyses the breakdown of hydrogen peroxide into water and oxygen. During an investigation into the activity of catalase, **24 cm<sup>3</sup>** of oxygen was released in **50 seconds (s)**. Calculate the rate of the reaction. Write your answer in **cm<sup>3</sup> s<sup>-1</sup>**.

Amount of product formed = change = **24 cm<sup>3</sup>**

Rate of reaction = change  $\div$  time =  $24 \text{ cm}^3 \div 50 \text{ s} = 0.48 \text{ cm}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$

$\text{cm}^3 \text{ s}^{-1}$  is another way of writing  $\text{cm}^3/\text{s}$ .

## Mad scientists — they're experi-mental...

You could adapt this experiment to investigate how factors other than pH affect the rate of amylase activity. E.g. you could use a water bath set to different temperatures to investigate the effect of temperature.

- Q1 An enzyme-controlled reaction was carried out at pH 4. After 2 minutes, 36 cm<sup>3</sup> of product had been released. Calculate the rate of reaction in cm<sup>3</sup>/s.

[1 mark]



Q1 Video Solution



# Enzymes and Digestion

The **enzymes** used in **digestion** are produced by **cells** and then released into the **gut** to mix with food.

## Digestive Enzymes Break Down Big Molecules

- 1) **Starch**, **proteins** and **fats** are **BIG** molecules. They're too big to pass through the walls of the digestive system, so **digestive enzymes** break these **BIG** molecules down into smaller ones like **sugars** (e.g. glucose and maltose), **amino acids**, **glycerol** and **fatty acids**. These smaller, **soluble** molecules can **pass easily** through the walls of the digestive system, allowing them to be **absorbed** into the **bloodstream**.

## Carbohydrases Convert Carbohydrates into Simple Sugars

**Amylase** is an example of a **carbohydrase**. It breaks down **starch**.



Starch is a carbohydrate.

Amylase is made in **three** places:

- 1) The **salivary glands**
- 2) The **pancreas**
- 3) The **small intestine**

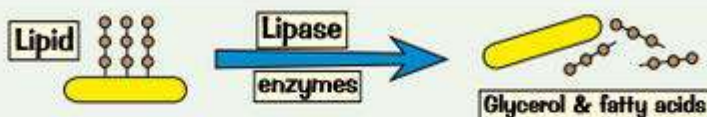
## Proteases Convert Proteins into Amino Acids



Proteases are made in **three** places:

- 1) The **stomach** (it's called **pepsin** there)
- 2) The **pancreas**
- 3) The **small intestine**

## Lipases Convert Lipids into Glycerol and Fatty Acids



Remember, lipids are fats and oils.

Lipases are made in **two** places: 1) The **pancreas** 2) The **small intestine**

- 2) The body makes good use of the **products** of digestion. They can be used to make **new carbohydrates**, **proteins** and **lipids**. Some of the **glucose** (a sugar) that's made is used in **respiration** (see p.54).

## Bile Neutralises the Stomach Acid and Emulsifies Fats

- 1) Bile is **produced** in the **liver**. It's **stored** in the **gall bladder** before it's released into the **small intestine**.
- 2) The **hydrochloric acid** in the stomach makes the pH **too acidic** for enzymes in the small intestine to work properly. Bile is **alkaline** — it **neutralises** the acid and makes conditions **alkaline**. The enzymes in the small intestine **work best** in these alkaline conditions.
- 3) It **emulsifies** fats. In other words it breaks the fat into **tiny droplets**. This gives a much **bigger surface area** of fat for the enzyme lipase to work on — which makes its digestion **faster**.

## What do you call an acid that's eaten all the pies...

Make sure you know the examples of amylase, protease and lipase, and the reactions that they catalyse.

Q1 Bile is a product of the liver. Describe and explain its role in digestion.

[4 marks]

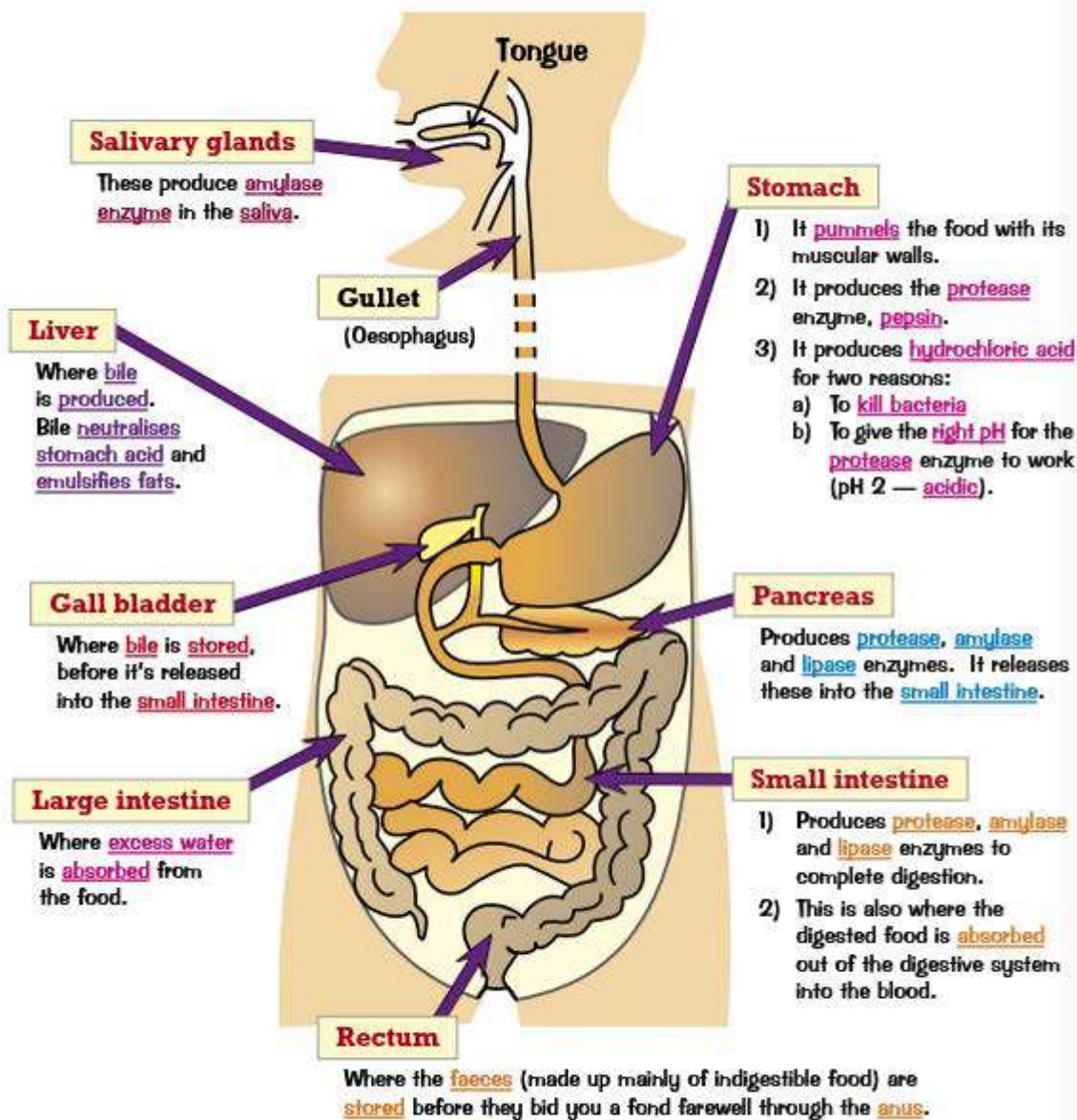


## More on Enzymes and Digestion

So now you know what the enzymes do, here's a nice big picture of the whole of the digestive system.

### The Breakdown of Food is Catalysed by Enzymes

- 1) Enzymes used in the digestive system are produced by specialised cells in glands and in the gut lining.
- 2) Different enzymes catalyse the breakdown of different food molecules.



### Mmmm — so who's for a chocolate digestive...

Did you know that the whole of your digestive system is actually a hole that goes right through your body. Think about it. It just gets loads of food, digestive juices and enzymes piled into it. Most of it's then absorbed into the body and the rest is politely stored for removal.

Q1 Name the three parts of the digestive system that produce protease enzymes.

[3 marks]



# Food Tests

## PRACTICAL

There are some clever ways to **identify** what type of **food molecule** a sample contains. For each of the tests, you need to prepare a **food sample**. It's the same each time though — here's what you'd do:

- 1) Get a piece of food and **break it up** using a **pestle and mortar**.
- 2) Transfer the ground up food to a **beaker** and add some **distilled water**.
- 3) Give the mixture a good **stir** with a glass rod to **dissolve** some of the food.
- 4) **Filter** the solution using a funnel lined with filter paper to **get rid** of the **solid** bits of food.



### Use the Benedict's Test to Test for Sugars

Sugars are found in all sorts of foods such as **biscuits**, **cereal** and **bread**. There are two types of sugars — **non-reducing** and **reducing**. You can test for **reducing sugars** in foods using the **Benedict's test**:

- 1) Prepare a **food sample** and transfer **5 cm<sup>3</sup>** to a test tube.
- 2) Prepare a **water bath** so that it's set to **75 °C**.
- 3) Add some **Benedict's solution** to the test tube (about **10 drops**) using a pipette.
- 4) Place the test tube in the water bath using a test tube holder and leave it in there for **5 minutes**. Make sure the tube is **pointing away** from you.
- 5) If the food sample contains a reducing sugar, the solution in the test tube will change from the normal **blue** colour to **green**, **yellow** or **brick-red** — it depends on **how much** sugar is in the food.

### Use Iodine Solution to Test for Starch

You can also check food samples for the presence of **starch**. Foods like **pasta**, **rice** and **potatoes** contain a lot of starch. Here's how to do the test:

- 1) Make a **food sample** and transfer **5 cm<sup>3</sup>** of your sample to a test tube.
- 2) Then add a few drops of **iodine solution** and **gently shake** the tube to mix the contents. If the sample contains starch, the colour of the solution will change from **brownish-orange** to **black** or **blue-black**.

### Use the Biuret Test to Test for Proteins

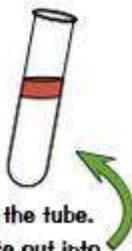
You can use the **biuret test** to see if a type of food contains **protein**. **Meat** and **cheese** are protein rich and good foods to use in this test. Here's how it's done:

- 1) Prepare a **sample** of your food and transfer **2 cm<sup>3</sup>** of your sample to a test tube.
- 2) Add **2 cm<sup>3</sup>** of **biuret solution** to the sample and mix the contents of the tube by **gently shaking** it.
- 3) If the food sample contains protein, the solution will change from **blue** to **purple**.  
If no protein is present, the solution will stay blue.

### Use the Sudan III Test to Test for Lipids

**Lipids** are found in foods such as **olive oil**, **margarine** and **milk**. You can test for the presence of lipids in a food using **Sudan III stain solution**.

- 1) Prepare a **sample** of the food you're testing (but you don't need to filter it). Transfer about **5 cm<sup>3</sup>** into a test tube.
- 2) Use a pipette to add **3 drops** of **Sudan III stain solution** to the test tube and **gently shake** the tube.
- 3) Sudan III stain solution **stains** lipids. If the sample contains lipids, the mixture will separate out into **two layers**. The top layer will be **bright red**. If no lipids are present, no separate red layer will form at the top of the liquid.



### All this talk of food is making me hungry...

Make sure you do a risk assessment before starting these tests — there are a lot of chemicals to use here.

Q1 Name the chemical that you would use to test a sample for the presence of starch.

[1 mark]

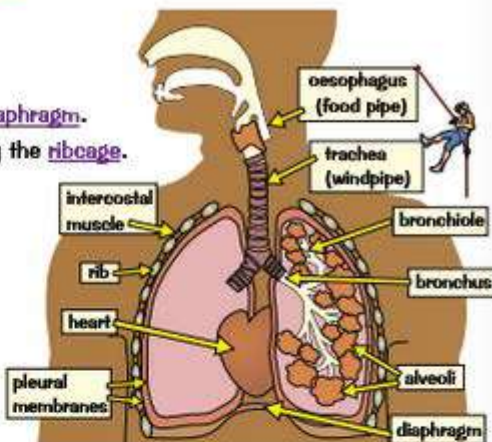


# The Lungs

You need to get **oxygen** into your **bloodstream** to supply your **cells** for **respiration**. You also need to get rid of **carbon dioxide** from your blood. This all happens in your **lungs** when you breathe air in and out.

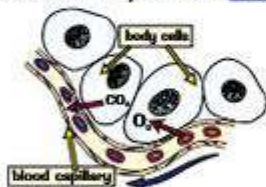
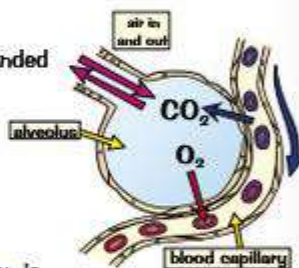
## The Lungs Are in the Thorax

- 1) The **thorax** is the top part of your body.
- 2) It's separated from the lower part of the body by the **diaphragm**.
- 3) The **lungs** are like big pink **sponges** and are protected by the **ribcage**. They're surrounded by the **pleural membranes**.
- 4) The air that you breathe in goes through the **trachea**. This splits into two tubes called **bronchi** (each one is a bronchus), one going to each lung.
- 5) The bronchi split into progressively smaller tubes called **bronchioles**.
- 6) The bronchioles finally end at small bags called **alveoli** where the gas exchange takes place (see below).



## Alveoli Carry Out Gas Exchange in the Body

- 1) The **lungs** contain millions and millions of little air sacs called **alveoli**, surrounded by a **network** of **blood capillaries**. This is where **gas exchange** happens.
- 2) The **blood** passing next to the alveoli has just returned to the lungs from the rest of the body, so it contains **lots** of **carbon dioxide** and **very little oxygen**. **Oxygen** diffuses **out** of the **alveolus** (high concentration) into the **blood** (low concentration). **Carbon dioxide** diffuses **out** of the **blood** (high concentration) into the **alveolus** (low concentration) to be breathed out.



- 3) When the blood reaches body cells **oxygen** is released from the **red blood cells** (where there's a high concentration) and diffuses into the **body cells** (where the concentration is low).
- 4) At the same time, **carbon dioxide** diffuses out of the **body cells** (where there's a high concentration) into the **blood** (where there's a low concentration). It's then carried back to the **lungs**.

## You Can Calculate the Breathing Rate in Breaths Per Minute

**Rate calculations** pop up all the time in biology, and you're expected to **know how to do them** — thankfully they're pretty **easy**. Breathing rate is the sort of thing that you could get asked to work out in your **exam**.

### EXAMPLE

Bea takes 91 breaths in 7 minutes. Calculate her average breathing rate in breaths per minute.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{breaths per minute} &= \text{number of breaths} \div \text{number of minutes} \\ &= 91 \div 7 \\ &= 13 \text{ breaths per minute}\end{aligned}$$

## Stop huffing and puffing and just learn it...

Alveoli are really well adapted for carrying out gas exchange. It could be a wise move to learn all about exactly how they're adapted. You met them back on page 21, so head back there if you need a reminder.

- Q1 During a 12 minute run, Aaqib took 495 breaths.  
Calculate his average breathing rate in breaths per minute.

[1 mark]



# Circulatory System — The Heart

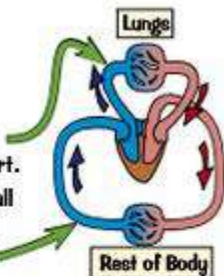
The circulatory system carries food and oxygen to every cell in the body. As well as being a delivery service, it's also a waste collection service — it carries waste products to where they can be removed from the body.

## The DOUBLE Circulatory System, Actually

The circulatory system is made up of the heart, blood vessels and blood.

Humans have a double circulatory system — two circuits joined together:

- 1) In the first one, the right ventricle (see below) pumps deoxygenated blood (blood without oxygen) to the lungs to take in oxygen. The blood then returns to the heart.
- 2) In the second one, the left ventricle (see below) pumps oxygenated blood around all the other organs of the body. The blood gives up its oxygen at the body cells and the deoxygenated blood returns to the heart to be pumped out to the lungs again.



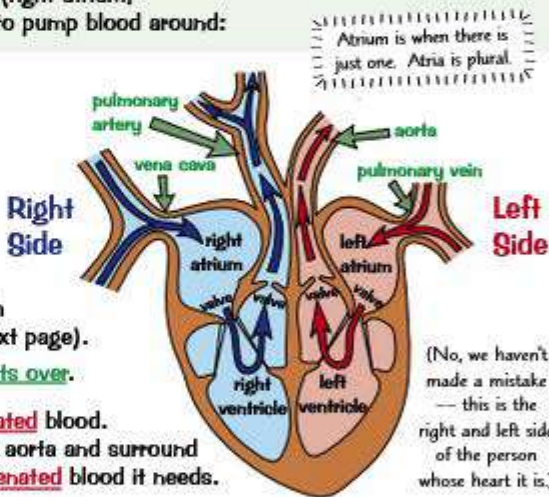
## The Heart Contracts to Pump Blood Around The Body

- 1) The heart is a pumping organ that keeps the blood flowing around the body. The walls of the heart are mostly made of muscle tissue.
- 2) The heart has valves to make sure that blood flows in the right direction — they prevent it flowing backwards.
- 3) This is how the heart uses its four chambers (right atrium, right ventricle, left atrium and left ventricle) to pump blood around:

- 1) Blood flows into the two atria from the vena cava and the pulmonary vein.
- 2) The atria contract, pushing the blood into the ventricles.
- 3) The ventricles contract, forcing the blood into the pulmonary artery and the aorta, and out of the heart.
- 4) The blood then flows to the organs through arteries, and returns through veins (see next page).
- 5) The atria fill again and the whole cycle starts over.

The heart also needs its own supply of oxygenated blood.

Arteries called coronary arteries branch off the aorta and surround the heart, making sure that it gets all the oxygenated blood it needs.



## The Heart Has a Pacemaker

- 1) Your resting heart rate is controlled by a group of cells in the right atrium wall that act as a pacemaker.
- 2) These cells produce a small electric impulse which spreads to the surrounding muscle cells, causing them to contract.
- 3) An artificial pacemaker is often used to control heartbeat if the natural pacemaker cells don't work properly (e.g. if the patient has an irregular heartbeat). It's a little device that's implanted under the skin and has a wire going to the heart. It produces an electric current to keep the heart beating regularly.

## Okay — let's get to the heart of the matter...

Interesting fact — when doctors use a stethoscope to listen to your heart, it's the valves closing that they hear.

Q1 Which chamber of the heart pumps deoxygenated blood to the lungs?

[1 mark]

Q2 What is the function of the coronary arteries?

[1 mark]



# Circulatory System — Blood Vessels

Want to know more about the circulatory system... Good. Because here's a whole extra page.

## Blood Vessels are Designed for Their Function

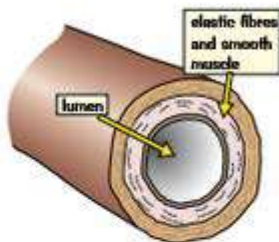
There are three different types of blood vessel:

- 1) **ARTERIES** — these carry the blood away from the heart.
- 2) **CAPILLARIES** — these are involved in the exchange of materials at the tissues.
- 3) **VEINS** — these carry the blood to the heart.

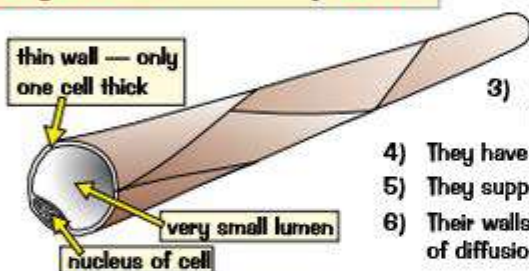


## Arteries Carry Blood Under Pressure

- 1) The heart pumps the blood out at high pressure so the artery walls are strong and elastic.
- 2) The walls are thick compared to the size of the hole down the middle (the "lumen" — silly hamel).
- 3) They contain thick layers of muscle to make them strong, and elastic fibres to allow them to stretch and spring back.



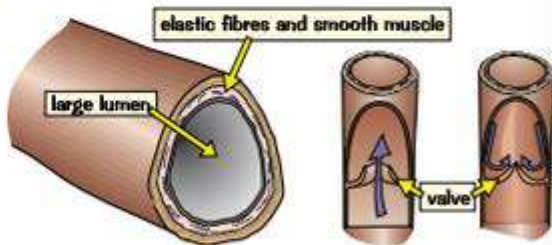
## Capillaries are Really Small



- 1) Arteries branch into capillaries.
- 2) Capillaries are really tiny — too small to see.
- 3) They carry the blood really close to every cell in the body to exchange substances with them.
- 4) They have permeable walls, so substances can diffuse in and out.
- 5) They supply food and oxygen, and take away waste like CO<sub>2</sub>.
- 6) Their walls are usually only one cell thick. This increases the rate of diffusion by decreasing the distance over which it occurs.

## Veins Take Blood Back to the Heart

- 1) Capillaries eventually join up to form veins. The blood is at lower pressure in the veins so the walls don't need to be as thick as artery walls.
- 2) They have a bigger lumen than arteries to help the blood flow despite the lower pressure.
- 3) They also have valves to help keep the blood flowing in the right direction.



## You Can Calculate the Rate of Blood Flow

You might get asked to calculate the rate of blood flow in your exam. Thankfully, it's not too tricky. Take a look at this example:

### EXAMPLE

1464 ml of blood passed through an artery in 4.5 minutes.  
Calculate the rate of blood flow through the artery in ml/min.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{rate of blood flow} &= \text{volume of blood} \div \text{number of minutes} \\ &= 1464 \div 4.5 = 325 \text{ ml/min}\end{aligned}$$

## Learn this page — don't struggle in vein...

Here's an interesting fact for you — your body contains about 60 000 miles of blood vessels.

- Q1 2.175 litres of blood passed through a vein in 8.7 minutes.  
Calculate the rate of blood flow through the vein in ml/min.

[2 marks]



Q1 Video Solution

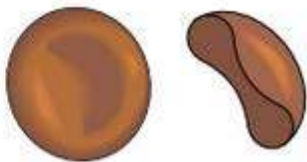


# Circulatory System — Blood

**Blood** is a **tissue**. One of its jobs is to act as a huge **transport** system. There are four main things in blood...

## Red Blood Cells Carry Oxygen

- 1) The job of red blood cells is to carry **oxygen** from the lungs to all the cells in the body.
- 2) Their shape is a **biconcave disc** (like a doughnut) — this gives a **large surface area** for absorbing **oxygen**.
- 3) They **don't** have a nucleus — this allows more room to carry oxygen.
- 4) They contain a red pigment called **haemoglobin**.
- 5) In the **lungs**, haemoglobin binds to **oxygen** to become **oxyhaemoglobin**. In body tissues, the reverse happens — oxyhaemoglobin splits up into haemoglobin and oxygen, to **release oxygen** to the **cells**.



The more red blood cells you've got, the more oxygen can get to your cells. At high altitudes there's less oxygen in the air — so people who live there produce more red blood cells to compensate.

## White Blood Cells Defend Against Infection



- 1) Some can change shape to gobble up unwelcome **microorganisms**, in a process called **phagocytosis**.
- 2) Others produce **antibodies** to fight microorganisms, as well as **antitoxins** to neutralise any toxins produced by the microorganisms.
- 3) Unlike red blood cells, they **do** have a **nucleus**.

## Platelets Help Blood Clot

- 1) These are **small fragments** of **cells**. They have **no nucleus**.
- 2) They help the blood to **clot** at a wound — to stop all your **blood pouring out** and to stop **microorganisms** getting in. (So basically platelets just float about waiting for accidents to happen.)
- 3) **Lack** of platelets can cause excessive bleeding and bruising.



## Plasma is the Liquid That Carries Everything in Blood

This is a pale straw-coloured liquid which **carries just about everything**:

- 1) **Red** and **white blood cells** and **platelets**.
- 2) Nutrients like **glucose** and **amino acids**.  
These are the soluble products of digestion which are absorbed from the gut and taken to the cells of the body.
- 3) **Carbon dioxide** from the organs to the lungs.
- 4) **Urea** from the liver to the kidneys.
- 5) **Hormones**.
- 6) **Proteins**.
- 7) **Antibodies** and **antitoxins** produced by the white blood cells.

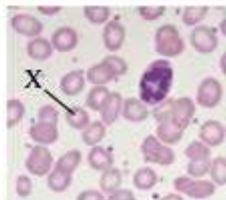


## Platelets — ideal for small dinners...

Blood tests can be used to diagnose loads of things — not just disorders of the blood. This is because the blood transports so many chemicals produced by so many organs... and it's easier to take blood than, say, a piece of muscle.

Q1 Describe the purpose of platelets in blood.

Q2 State the function of the cell labelled X in the image on the right.



[1 mark]

[1 mark]

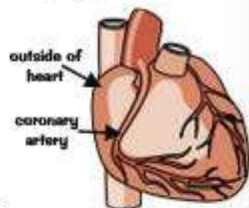


# Cardiovascular Disease

**Cardiovascular disease** is a term used to describe diseases of the heart or blood vessels, for example coronary heart disease. This page tells you all about how **stents** and **statins** are used to combat coronary heart disease.

## Stents Keep Arteries Open

- 1) **Coronary heart disease** is when the **coronary arteries** that supply the **blood** to the muscle of the heart get **blocked** by **layers of fatty material building up**. This causes the arteries to become **narrow**, so blood flow is **restricted** and there's a **lack of oxygen** to the heart muscle — this can result in a **heart attack**.
- 2) **Stents** are **tubes** that are inserted **inside arteries**. They keep them **open**, making sure **blood can pass through** to the heart muscles. This keeps the person's **heart beating** (and the person alive).



- 3) **Stents** are a way of **lowering the risk** of a **heart attack** in people with **coronary heart disease**. They are **effective** for a **long time** and the **recovery time** from the surgery is relatively **quick**.
- 4) On the down side, there is a risk of **complications** during the operation (e.g. heart attack) and a risk of **infection** from surgery. There is also the risk of patients developing a **blood clot** near the stent — this is called **thrombosis**.

## Statins Reduce Cholesterol in the Blood

- 1) **Cholesterol** is an essential lipid that your body produces and needs to function properly. However, **too much** of a certain type of **cholesterol** (known as '**bad**' or **LDL cholesterol**) can cause **health problems**.
- 2) Having too much of this 'bad' cholesterol in the bloodstream can cause **fatty deposits** to form inside **arteries**, which can lead to **coronary heart disease**.
- 3) **Statins** are **drugs** that can **reduce** the amount of 'bad' cholesterol **present** in the **bloodstream**. This **slows down** the rate of fatty deposits forming.

## Statins Have Advantages and Disadvantages

### Advantages

- 1) By reducing the amount of 'bad' cholesterol in the blood, statins can **reduce** the risk of **strokes**, **coronary heart disease** and **heart attacks**.
- 2) As well as reducing the amount of 'bad' cholesterol, statins can **increase** the amount of a **beneficial** type of cholesterol (known as '**good**' or **HDL cholesterol**) in your bloodstream. This type can **remove** 'bad' cholesterol from the blood.
- 3) Some studies suggest that statins may also help **prevent** some **other diseases**.

### Disadvantages

- 1) Statins are a **long-term** drug that must be **taken regularly**. There's the risk that someone could **forget** to take them.
- 2) Statins can sometimes cause **negative side effects**, e.g. headaches. Some of these side effects can be **serious**, e.g. kidney failure, liver damage and memory loss.
- 3) The effect of statins **isn't instant**. It takes **time** for their **effect** to kick in.

## Unlike stents and statins, using CGP books only has advantages...

Stents and statins might be good treatments for coronary heart disease, but they're not perfect. Make sure you're aware of the drawbacks as well as the advantages of each. That way, you'll be covered if they come up in the exam.

- Q1
- a) How can stents be used to reduce the risk of heart attacks in people with coronary heart disease?
  - b) Suggest two disadvantages of treating patients using stents.

[2 marks]

[2 marks]



## More on Cardiovascular Disease

With more fakery than a 'Rollecks' watch, this page is about **artificial hearts**, **artificial blood** and **replacing heart valves**. All a bit gruesome, I'll admit — but it's life-saving stuff.

### An Artificial Heart Can Pump Blood Around the Body

If a patient has **heart failure**, doctors may perform a **heart transplant** (or **heart and lungs transplant** if the **lungs** are also **diseased**) using **donor organs** from people who have recently died. However, if donor organs **aren't available** right away or they're **not** the **best option**, doctors may fit an **artificial heart**.

- 1) **Artificial hearts** are **mechanical devices** that **pump blood** for a person whose own heart has **failed**. They're **usually** only used as a **temporary** fix, to keep a person **alive** until a **donor heart** can be found or to help a person **recover** by allowing the heart to **rest** and **heal**. In some cases though they're used as a **permanent** fix, which **reduces** the **need** for a donor heart.
- 2) The main **advantage** of artificial hearts is that they're **less likely to be rejected** by the body's immune system than a donor heart. This is because they're made from **metals** or **plastics**, so the body doesn't recognise them as **'foreign'** and attack in the same way as it does with living tissue.
- 3) But **surgery** to fit an artificial heart (as with transplant surgery) can lead to **bleeding** and **infection**. Also, artificial hearts **don't** work as well as healthy **natural** ones — parts of the heart could **wear out** or the **electrical motor** could **fail**. Blood doesn't flow through artificial hearts as **smoothly**, which can cause **blood clots** and lead to **strokes**. The patient has to take **drugs** to **thin** their blood and make sure this doesn't happen, which can cause problems with **bleeding** if they're **hurt** in an accident.

### Faulty Heart Valves Can Be Replaced With Biological or Mechanical Valves

- 1) The **valves** in the heart can be damaged or weakened by **heart attacks**, **infection** or **old age**.
- 2) The damage may cause the **valve tissue** to **stiffen**, so it **won't open properly**. Or a valve may become **leaky**, allowing blood to flow in **both directions** rather than just forward. This means that blood **doesn't circulate** as **effectively** as normal.
- 3) Severe valve damage can be treated by **replacing** the valve. Replacement valves can be ones taken from **humans** or **other mammals** (e.g. cows or pigs) — these are **biological valves**. Or they can be **man-made** — these are **mechanical valves**.
- 4) Replacing a **valve** is a much **less drastic** procedure than a whole heart transplant. But fitting artificial valves is still **major surgery** and there can still be problems with **blood clots**.



### Artificial Blood Can Keep You Alive In An Emergency

- 1) When someone **loses a lot of blood**, e.g. in an accident, their heart can still **pump** the remaining **red blood cells** around (to get **oxygen** to their **organs**), as long as the **volume** of their blood can be **topped up**.
- 2) **Artificial blood** is a **blood substitute**, e.g. a salt solution ("**saline**"), which is used to **replace** the **lost volume** of blood. It's **safe** (if no **air bubbles** get into the blood) and can keep people **alive** even if they lose  $\frac{2}{3}$  of their red blood cells. This may give the patient enough **time** to produce **new** blood cells. If not, the patient will need a **blood transfusion**.
- 3) Ideally, an artificial blood product would **replace** the function of the lost **red blood cells**, so that there's **no need** for a blood transfusion. Scientists are currently working on products that can do this.

### Pity they can't fit me an artificial brain before the exam...

Make sure you know about the consequences of faulty heart valves or heart failure, as well as the advantages and disadvantages of the treatments on this page. Obviously if someone is really ill, it's unlikely that they'd turn down an artificial heart, artificial blood or a valve replacement — but these treatments aren't perfect.

- Q1 a) Describe how faulty heart valves can lead to poor blood circulation. [2 marks]  
 b) Suggest how severe damage to a heart valve can be treated. [1 mark]
- Q2 Suggest one disadvantage of treating coronary heart disease with an artificial heart. [1 mark]



# Health and Disease

There's not a great deal about **diseases** and **health problems** that you can laugh about, so excuse me if this page is a bit dull. It's important stuff to know about though, so you'd best get cracking.

## Diseases are a Major Cause of Ill Health

**Health** is the **state** of **physical** and **mental wellbeing**. Diseases are often responsible for causing **ill health**.

## Diseases Can be Communicable or Non-Communicable

- Communicable diseases** are those that can **spread** from **person to person** or between **animals** and **people**. They can be caused by things like **bacteria**, **viruses**, **parasites** and **fungi**. They're sometimes described as **contagious** or **infectious** diseases. **Measles** and **malaria** are examples of communicable diseases. There's more about them on pages 43-45.
- Non-communicable diseases** are those that **cannot spread** between people or between animals and people. They generally last for a **long time** and **get worse slowly**. **Asthma**, **cancer** and **coronary heart disease** (see page 34) are examples of non-communicable diseases.

## Different Types of Disease Sometimes Interact

Sometimes diseases can **interact** and cause **other** physical and mental health issues that don't immediately seem related. Here are a few examples:

- People who have problems with their **immune system** (the system that your body uses to help fight off infection — see p.46) have an **increased chance** of suffering from **communicable diseases** such as influenza (flu), because their body is **less likely** to be able to **defend** itself against the **pathogen** that causes the disease.
- Some types of **cancer** can be triggered by **infection** by certain **viruses**. For example, infection with some types of **hepatitis virus** can cause long-term infections in the liver, where the virus lives in the cells. This can lead to an **increased chance** of developing **liver cancer**. Another example is infection with **HPV** (human papilloma virus), which can cause **cervical cancer** in women.
- Immune system reactions** in the body caused by **infection** by a **pathogen** can sometimes trigger **allergic reactions** such as **skin rashes** or worsen the symptoms of **asthma** for asthma sufferers.
- Mental health** issues such as **depression** can be triggered when someone is suffering from severe **physical health problems**, particularly if they have an **impact** on the person's ability to carry out **everyday activities** or if they affect the person's **life expectancy**.

Pathogen is just the fancy term for a microorganism that can cause a disease when it infects its host.

## Other Factors Can Also Affect Your Health

There are plenty of factors other than diseases that can also affect your health. For example:

- Whether or not you have a **good, balanced diet** that provides your body with **everything** it needs, and in the **right amounts**. A poor diet can affect your physical and mental health.
- The **stress** you are under — being constantly under lots of stress can lead to health issues.
- Your **life situation** — for example, whether you have easy **access** to **medicines** to treat illness, or whether you have **access** to things that can **prevent** you from **getting ill** in the first place, e.g. being able to buy **healthy food** or access **condoms** to prevent the **transmission** of some sexually transmitted diseases.

## If stress can affect your health, why do we have exams...

You really need to get the terms communicable and non-communicable disease into your head. They could come up in the exam and you'd be really sad if you didn't understand the question.

Q1 What is meant by 'health'?

[1 mark]

Q2 Why is influenza classed as a communicable disease?

[1 mark]



# Risk Factors for Non-Communicable Diseases

You've probably heard the term 'risk factor' before. This page has all the info you need to know about them.

## Risk Factors Increase Your Chance of Getting a Disease

- 1) Risk factors are things that are linked to an increase in the likelihood that a person will develop a certain disease during their lifetime. They don't guarantee that someone will get the disease.
- 2) Risk factors are often aspects of a person's lifestyle (e.g. how much exercise they do). They can also be the presence of certain substances in the environment (e.g. air pollution) or substances in your body (e.g. asbestos fibres — asbestos was a material used in buildings until it was realised that the fibres could build up in your airways and cause diseases such as cancer later in life).
- 3) Many non-communicable diseases are caused by several different risk factors interacting with each other rather than one factor alone.
- 4) Lifestyle factors can have different impacts locally, nationally and globally.

E.g. in developed countries, non-communicable diseases are more common as people generally have a higher income and can buy high-fat food. Nationally, people from deprived areas are more likely to smoke, have a poor diet and not exercise. This means the incidence of cardiovascular disease, obesity and Type 2 diabetes is higher in those areas. Your individual choices affect the local incidence of disease.

## Some Risk Factors Can Cause a Disease Directly

- 1) Some risk factors are able to directly cause a disease. For example:
  - 1) Smoking has been proven to directly cause cardiovascular disease, lung disease and lung cancer. It damages the walls of arteries and the cells in the lining of the lungs.
  - 2) It's thought that obesity can directly cause Type 2 diabetes by making the body less sensitive or resistant to insulin, meaning that it struggles to control the concentration of glucose in the blood.
  - 3) Drinking too much alcohol has been shown to cause liver disease. Too much alcohol can affect brain function too. It can damage the nerve cells in the brain, causing the brain to lose volume.
  - 4) Smoking when pregnant can cause lots of health problems for the unborn baby. Drinking alcohol has similar effects.
  - 5) Cancer can be directly caused by exposure to certain substances or radiation. Things that cause cancer are known as carcinogens. Ionising radiation (e.g. from X-rays) is an example of a carcinogen.
- 2) However, risk factors are identified by scientists looking for correlations in data, and correlation doesn't always equal cause (see p.9). Some risk factors aren't capable of directly causing a disease. For example, a lack of exercise and a high fat diet are heavily linked to an increased chance of cardiovascular disease, but they can't cause the disease directly. It's the resulting high blood pressure and high 'bad' cholesterol levels (see p.34) that can actually cause it.

## Non-Communicable Diseases Can Be Costly

- 1) The HUMAN cost of non-communicable diseases is obvious. Tens of millions of people around the world die from non-communicable diseases per year. People with these diseases may have a lower quality of life or a shorter lifespan. This not only affects the sufferers themselves, but their loved ones too.
- 2) It's also important to think about the FINANCIAL cost. The cost to the NHS of researching and treating these diseases is huge — and it's the same for other health services and organisations around the world. Families may have to move or adapt their home to help a family member with a disease, which can be costly. Also, if the family member with the disease has to give up work or dies, the family's income will be reduced. A reduction in the number of people able to work can also affect a country's economy.

## Best put down that cake and go for a run...

You might be asked to interpret data about risk factors. See p.9 for a few tips on what you can and can't say.

Q1 Give an example of a type of risk factor other than an aspect of a person's lifestyle.

[1 mark]



# Cancer

Cancer's not a pleasant topic, but the more we understand about it, the better our chances of avoiding and beating it (and getting good marks in the exam). You're a good way through the topic, so keep going.

## Cancer is Caused by Uncontrolled Cell Growth and Division

This uncontrolled growth and division is a result of changes that occur to the cells and results in the formation of a tumour (a mass of cells). Not all tumours are cancerous. They can be benign or malignant:



- 1) Benign — This is where the tumour grows until there's no more room. The tumour stays in one place (usually within a membrane) rather than invading other tissues in the body. This type isn't normally dangerous, and the tumour isn't cancerous.
- 2) Malignant — This is where the tumour grows and spreads to neighbouring healthy tissues. Cells can break off and spread to other parts of the body by travelling in the bloodstream. The malignant cells then invade healthy tissues elsewhere in the body and form secondary tumours. Malignant tumours are dangerous and can be fatal — they are cancers.

## Risk Factors Can Increase the Chance of Some Cancers

Anyone can develop cancer. Having risk factors doesn't mean that you'll definitely get cancer. It just means that you're at an increased risk of developing the disease. Cancer survival rates have increased due to medical advances such as improved treatment, being able to diagnose cancer earlier and increased screening for the disease.

## Risk Factors Can Be Associated With Lifestyle

Scientists have identified lots of lifestyle risk factors for various types of cancer. For example:

- 1) Smoking — It's a well known fact that smoking is linked to lung cancer, but research has also linked it to other types of cancer too, including mouth, bowel, stomach and cervical cancer. 
- 2) Obesity — Obesity has been linked to many different cancers, including bowel, liver and kidney cancer. It's the second biggest preventable cause of cancer after smoking. 
- 3) UV exposure — People who are often exposed to UV radiation from the Sun have an increased chance of developing skin cancer. People who live in sunny climates and people who spend a lot of time outside are at higher risk of the disease. People who frequently use sun beds are also putting themselves at higher risk of developing skin cancer.
- 4) Viral infection — Infection with some viruses has been shown to increase the chances of developing certain types of cancer. For example, infection with hepatitis B and hepatitis C viruses can increase the risk of developing liver cancer. The likelihood of becoming infected with these viruses sometimes depends on lifestyle — e.g. they can be spread between people through unprotected sex or sharing needles.

## Risk Factors Can Also Be Associated With Genetics

- 1) Sometimes you can inherit faulty genes that make you more susceptible to cancer.
- 2) For example, mutations (changes) in the BRCA genes have been linked to an increased likelihood of developing breast and ovarian cancer.

## At least our rubbish summers reduce our UV exposure...

Joking aside, UV radiation can still reach us through the clouds, and like many other lifestyle risk factors, we can take steps to reduce the risk, e.g. by keeping covered up outside and wearing sun block.

Q1 What are tumours the result of?

[1 mark]

Q2 List three lifestyle factors that can increase the risk of developing cancer.

[3 marks]



# Plant Cell Organisation

You saw on page 24 how animals keep their **specialised cells** neat and tidy — plants are in on the act too.

## Plant Cells Are Organised Into Tissues And Organs

Plants are made of **organs** like **stems**, **roots** and **leaves**. Plant organs work together to make **organ systems**. These can perform the various tasks that a plant needs to carry out to survive and grow — for example, **transporting substances** around the plant. Plant organs are made of **tissues**. Examples of plant tissues are:

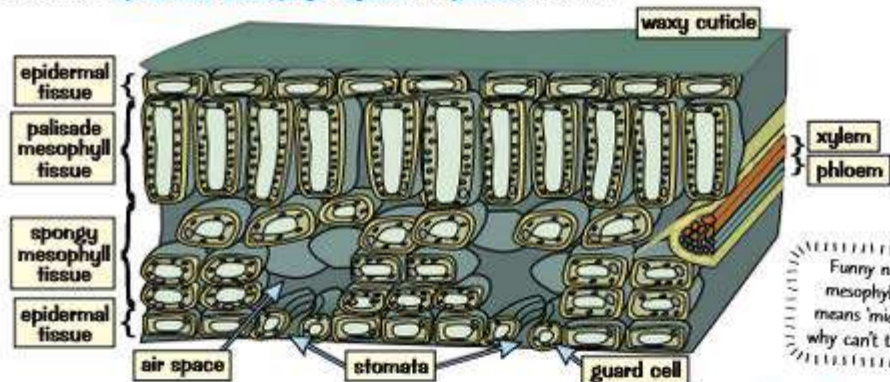
- 1) **Epidermal tissue** — this **covers** the whole plant.
- 2) **Palisade mesophyll tissue** — this is the part of the leaf where most **photosynthesis** happens.
- 3) **Spongy mesophyll tissue** — this is also in the leaf, and contains big **air spaces** to allow **gases to diffuse** in and out of cells.
- 4) **Xylem and phloem** — they **transport** things like **water**, **mineral ions** and **food** around the plant (through the roots, stems and leaves — see next page for more).
- 5) **Meristem tissue** — this is found at the **growing tips** of **shoots** and **roots** and is able to **differentiate** (change) into lots of **different types** of plant cell, allowing the plant to **grow**.

For more on photosynthesis, see page 50.



## The Leaf is an Organ Made Up of Several Types of Tissue

Leaves contain **epidermal**, **mesophyll**, **xylem** and **phloem** tissues.



Funny names here — like mesophyll. Mesophyll just means 'middle of a leaf'. (So why can't they just say that?)

You need to know how the **structures** of the tissues that make up the leaf are **related** to their **function**:

- 1) The epidermal tissues are covered with a **waxy cuticle**, which helps to **reduce water loss** by evaporation.
- 2) The **upper epidermis** is **transparent** so that light can pass through it to the **palisade layer**.
- 3) The **palisade layer** has lots of **chloroplasts** (the little structures where photosynthesis takes place). This means that they're near the top of the leaf where they can get the most **light**.
- 4) The **xylem** and **phloem** form a network of vascular bundles, which **deliver water** and other **nutrients** to the entire leaf and take away the **glucose** produced by photosynthesis. They also help **support** the structure.
- 5) The **tissues** of leaves are also adapted for efficient **gas exchange** (see page 22). E.g. the **lower epidermis** is full of little holes called **stomata**, which let  $\text{CO}_2$  diffuse directly into the leaf. The opening and closing of stomata is controlled by **guard cells** in response to environmental conditions. The **air spaces** in the **spongy mesophyll** tissue **increase** the rate of diffusion of gases.

## Plant cell organisation — millions of members worldwide...

There are a lot of weird names here, so make sure you spend plenty of time on this page. Maybe you could draw your own leaf diagram and label it with descriptions of the different tissue types. It would make an excellent Christmas present for someone, or an art collector might even want it.

Q1 Describe the characteristics of meristem tissue.

[2 marks]



# Transpiration and Translocation

You might be surprised to learn that there aren't tiny trucks that transport substances around plants. Then again, you might not be — either way, you need to learn the stuff on this page...



## Phloem Tubes Transport Food:

- 1) Made of columns of **elongated** living cells with small **pores** in the **end walls** to allow **cell sap** to flow through.
- 2) They transport **food substances** (mainly dissolved **sugars**) made in the leaves to the rest of the plant for **immediate use** (e.g. in growing regions) or for **storage**.
- 3) The transport goes in **both directions**.
- 4) This process is called **translocation**.

Cell sap is a liquid that's made up of the substances being transported and water.



## Xylem Tubes Take Water Up:

- 1) Made of **dead cells** joined end to end with **no** end walls between them and a hole down the middle. They're strengthened with a material called **lignin**.
- 2) They carry **water** and **mineral** ions from the **roots** to the **stem** and **leaves**.
- 3) The movement of water **from the roots, through the xylem** and **out of the leaves** is called the **transpiration stream** (see below).

## Transpiration is the Loss of Water from the Plant



- 1) Transpiration is caused by the **evaporation** and **diffusion** (see page 17) of water from a plant's surface. Most transpiration happens at the **leaves**.
- 2) This evaporation creates a slight **shortage** of water in the leaf, and so more water is drawn up from the rest of the plant through the **xylem vessels** to replace it.
- 3) This in turn means more water is drawn up from the **roots**, and so there's a constant **transpiration stream** of water through the plant.

Head back to page 19 to see how root hair cells are adapted for taking up water.

Transpiration is just a **side-effect** of the way leaves are adapted for **photosynthesis**. They have to have **stomata** in them so that gases can be exchanged easily (see page 22). Because there's more water **inside** the plant than in the **air outside**, the water escapes from the leaves through the stomata by diffusion.

## Don't let revision stress you out — just go with the phloem...

Phloem transports substances in both directions, but xylem only transports things upwards — xy to the sky.

Q1 Describe the structure of xylem.

[3 marks]



# Transpiration and Stomata

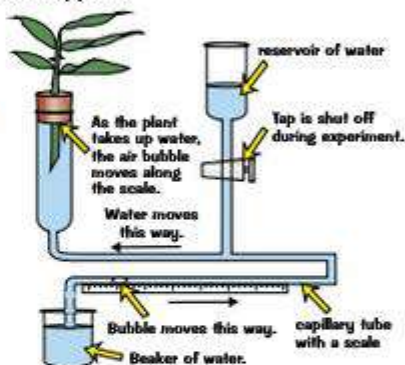
Sorry, more on [transpiration](#). But then it's a quick dash through [stomata](#) and out of the other end of the topic.

## Transpiration Rate is Affected by Four Main Things

- LIGHT INTENSITY** — the [brighter](#) the light, the [greater](#) the transpiration rate.  
[Stomata](#) begin to [close](#) as it gets darker. Photosynthesis can't happen in the dark, so they don't need to be open to let  $\text{CO}_2$  in. When the stomata are closed, very little water can escape.
- TEMPERATURE** — the [warmer](#) it is, the [faster](#) transpiration happens.  
 When it's warm the water particles have [more energy](#) to evaporate and diffuse out of the stomata.
- AIR FLOW** — the [better](#) the air flow around a leaf (e.g. stronger wind), the [greater](#) the transpiration rate.  
 If air flow around a leaf is [poor](#), the water vapour just [surrounds the leaf](#) and doesn't move away. This means there's a [high concentration](#) of water particles outside the leaf as well as inside it, so [diffusion](#) doesn't happen as quickly. If there's [good](#) air flow, the water vapour is [swept away](#), maintaining a [low concentration](#) of water in the air outside the leaf. Diffusion then happens quickly, from an area of higher concentration to an area of lower concentration.
- HUMIDITY** — the [drier](#) the air around a leaf, the [faster](#) transpiration happens.  
 This is like what happens with air flow. If the air is [humid](#) there's a lot of water in it already, so there's not much of a [difference](#) between the inside and the outside of the leaf. Diffusion happens [fastest](#) if there's a [really high concentration](#) in one place, and a [really low concentration](#) in the other.

You can estimate the [rate of transpiration](#) by measuring the [uptake of water](#) by a plant. This is because you can assume that [water uptake](#) by the plant is directly related to [water loss](#) by the leaves (transpiration).

Set up the apparatus as in the diagram, and then record the [starting position](#) of the air bubble. Start a stopwatch and record the [distance moved](#) by the bubble per unit time, e.g. per hour. Keep the [conditions constant](#) throughout the experiment, e.g. the [temperature](#) and [air humidity](#).



This piece of apparatus is called a potometer. Setting it up is quite tough — there are some tips on page 236.

## Guard Cells Are Adapted to Open and Close Stomata



- They have a kidney shape which [opens](#) and [closes](#) the [stomata](#) (page 22) in a leaf.
- When the plant has [lots](#) of water the guard cells fill with it and go plump and [turgid](#). This makes the stomata [open](#) so [gases](#) can be exchanged for [photosynthesis](#).
- When the plant is [short](#) of water, the guard cells lose water and become [flaccid](#), making the stomata [close](#). This helps stop too much water vapour [escaping](#).
- [Thin](#) outer walls and [thickened](#) inner walls make the opening and closing work.
- They're also [sensitive to light](#) and [close at night](#) to save water without losing out on photosynthesis.
- You usually find [more](#) stomata on the [undersides](#) of leaves than on the top. The [lower surface](#) is [shaded](#) and [cooler](#) — so [less water](#) is [lost](#) through the stomata than if they were on the upper surface.
- Guard cells are therefore adapted for [gas exchange](#) and [controlling water loss](#) within a [leaf](#).

## I say stomaaarta, you say stomaaayta...

Different leaves will have different distributions of stomata. You can peel the epidermal tissue off some leaves and mount them on microscope slides (see page 13) to compare them. It's thrilling stuff.

- Q1 Aloe vera plants grow in hot, dry areas. Primroses grow in cool, wet areas. Predict which plant will have fewer stomata per  $\text{cm}^2$  on the underside of its leaves. Explain your answer. [2 marks]





# Revision Questions for Topic B2

Well, that's **Topic B2** finished. Now it's time for the greatest quiz ever.

- Try these questions and **tick off each one** when you **get it right**.
- When you're **completely happy** with a sub-topic, tick it off.

For even more practice, try the  
**Retrieval Quiz** for Topic B2 —  
just scan this QR code!



## Cell Organisation (p.24) ☐

- 1) What is a tissue? ☐
- 2) Explain what is meant by the term 'organ system'. ☐

## The Role of Enzymes and Food Tests (p.25-29) ☐

- 3) Why can enzymes be described as biological catalysts? ☐
- 4) Why do enzymes only usually catalyse one reaction? ☐
- 5) What does it mean when an enzyme has been 'denatured'? ☐
- 6) Describe how you could investigate the effect of pH on the rate of amylase activity. ☐
- 7) List the three places where amylase is made in the human body. ☐
- 8) What is the role of lipases? ☐
- 9) Where is bile stored? ☐
- 10) Name the solution that you would use to test for the presence of lipids in a food sample. ☐

## The Lungs and Circulatory System (p.30-33) ☐

- 11) Name the tubes that split off the trachea. ☐
- 12) Explain the role that alveoli play in gas exchange. ☐
- 13) Explain why the circulatory system in humans is described as a 'double circulatory system'. ☐
- 14) Why does the heart have valves? ☐
- 15) Name the four chambers of the heart. ☐
- 16) How is the resting heart rate controlled in a healthy heart? ☐
- 17) How are arteries adapted to carry blood away from the heart? ☐
- 18) Why do red blood cells not have a nucleus? ☐

## Diseases and Risk Factors (p.34-38) ☐

- 19) Give two advantages and two disadvantages of statins. ☐
- 20) What is the difference between biological and mechanical replacement heart valves? ☐
- 21) What is meant by a non-communicable disease? ☐
- 22) Give an example of where different types of disease might interact in the body. ☐
- 23) What is meant by a risk factor of a disease? ☐
- 24) Which type of tumour is cancerous? ☐

## Plant Cell Organisation and Transport (p.39-41) ☐

- 25) List the tissues that make up a leaf. ☐
- 26) Explain how the structure of the upper epidermal tissue in a leaf is related to its function. ☐
- 27) What is the function of phloem? ☐
- 28) What is transpiration? ☐
- 29) List the four main things that affect transpiration. ☐
- 30) How could you measure the rate of transpiration? ☐
- 31) Name the type of cell that helps open and close stomata. ☐



# Communicable Disease

If you're hoping I'll ease you gently into this new topic... no such luck. Straight on to the baddies of biology.

## There Are Several Types of Pathogen

- 1) Pathogens are **microorganisms** that enter the body and cause **disease**.
- 2) They cause **communicable** (infectious) diseases — diseases that can **easily spread** (see p.36).
- 3) Both **plants** and **animals** can be infected by pathogens.

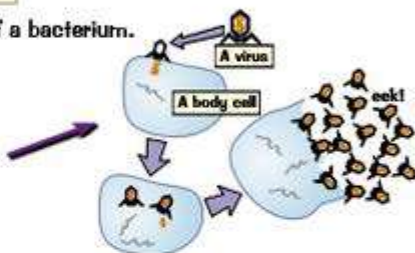


## 1. Bacteria Are Very Small Living Cells

- 1) Bacteria are **very small cells** (about 1/100th the size of your body cells), which can reproduce rapidly inside your body.
- 2) They can make you **feel ill** by **producing toxins** (poisons) that **damage your cells and tissues**.

## 2. Viruses Are Not Cells — They're Much Smaller

- 1) Viruses are **not cells**. They're **tiny**, about 1/100th the size of a bacterium.
- 2) Like bacteria, they can **reproduce rapidly** inside your body.
- 3) They live inside your cells and **replicate themselves** using the cells' **machinery** to produce many **copies** of themselves. The cell will usually then **burst**, releasing all the new viruses.
- 4) This **cell damage** is what makes you feel ill.



## 3. Protists are Single-Celled Eukaryotes

- 1) There are lots of different types of protists. But they're all **eukaryotes** (see page 11) and most of them are **single-celled**.
- 2) Some protists are **parasites**. Parasites live **on** or **inside** other organisms and can cause them **damage**. They are often transferred to the organism by a **vector**, which doesn't get the disease itself — e.g. an insect that carries the protist.

## 4. Fungi Come in Different Shapes

- 1) Some fungi are **single-celled**. Others have a **body** which is made up of **hyphae** (thread-like structures).
- 2) These hyphae can **grow** and **penetrate human skin** and the **surface of plants**, causing **diseases**.
- 3) The hyphae can produce **spores**, which can be spread to other plants and animals.

## Pathogens Can Be Spread in Different Ways

Pathogens can be **spread** in many ways. Here are a few that you need to know about.

- 1) **WATER** — Some pathogens can be picked up by drinking or bathing in **dirty water**. E.g. **cholera** is a **bacterial infection** that's spread by **drinking** water **contaminated** with the diarrhoea of other sufferers.
- 2) **AIR** — Pathogens can be carried in the **air** and can then be **breathed in**. Some airborne pathogens are carried in the air in **droplets** produced when you **cough** or **sneeze** — e.g. the **influenza virus** that causes **flu** is spread this way.
- 3) **DIRECT CONTACT** — Some pathogens can be picked up by **touching** contaminated surfaces, including the **skin**. E.g. **athlete's foot** is a **fungus** which makes skin itch and flake off. It's most commonly spread by touching the same things as an infected person, e.g. **shower floors** and **towels**.

**Hooray, I've avoided the classic 'he was a fungi to be with' joke...**

Yuck, lots of nasties out there that can cause disease. Plants need to be worried too, as you'll find out.

Q1 Describe how viruses cause cell damage.

[2 marks]



# Viral, Fungal and Protist Diseases

There are heaps of diseases caused by **viruses**, **fungi** and **protists**, but you just need to know about these ones.

## You Need to Know About Three Viral Diseases...

- 1) **Measles** is a **viral** disease. It is spread by **droplets** from an infected person's sneeze or cough.
- 2) People with measles develop a **red skin rash**, and they'll show signs of a **fever** (a high temperature).
- 3) Measles can be very serious, or even fatal, if there are **complications**. For example, measles can sometimes lead to **pneumonia** (a lung infection) or inflammation of the brain (**encephalitis**).
- 4) Most people are **vaccinated** against measles when they're young.

- 1) **HIV** is a **virus** spread by **sexual contact**, or by exchanging **bodily fluids** such as blood. This can happen when people **share needles** when taking drugs.
- 2) HIV initially causes **flu-like symptoms** for a few weeks. Usually, the person doesn't then experience any symptoms for several years. During this time, HIV can be controlled with **antiretroviral drugs**. These stop the virus **replicating** in the body.
- 3) The virus attacks the **immune cells** (see page 46).
- 4) If the body's immune system is badly damaged, it **can't cope** with **other infections** or **cancers**. At this stage, the virus is known as **late stage HIV infection**, or **AIDS**.

- 1) **Tobacco mosaic virus (TMV)** is a **virus** that affects many species of **plants**, e.g. **tomatoes**.
- 2) It causes a mosaic pattern on the leaves of the plants — parts of the leaves become **discoloured**.
- 3) The discolouration means the plant can't carry out **photosynthesis** as well, so the virus affects **growth**.

## ...a Fungal Disease...

- 1) **Rose black spot** is a **fungus** that causes **purple or black spots** to develop on the **leaves** of **rose plants**. Who'd have guessed. The leaves can then turn **yellow** and **drop off**.
- 2) This means that less **photosynthesis** can happen, so the plant doesn't **grow** very well.
- 3) It spreads through the environment in **water** or by the **wind**.
- 4) Gardeners can treat the disease using **fungicides** and by **stripping** the plant of its **affected leaves**. These leaves then need to be **destroyed** so that the fungus can't spread to other rose plants.

Photosynthesis is important for plant growth because it produces glucose — see page 50.



## ...and a Disease Caused by a Protist

- 1) **Malaria** is caused by a protist (see the previous page).
- 2) Part of the malarial protist's **life cycle** takes place inside the mosquito. The mosquitoes are **vectors** (see the previous page) — they **pick up** the malarial protist when they **feed** on an **infected animal**.
- 3) Every time the mosquito feeds on another animal, it **infects it** by inserting the protist into the animal's blood vessels.
- 4) Malaria causes **repeating** episodes of **fever**. It can be **fatal**.
- 5) The **spread** of malaria can be reduced by stopping the **mosquitoes** from **breeding**.
- 6) People can be protected from mosquitoes using **insecticides** and **mosquito nets**.

## I've heard this page has gone viral...

The examiner could grill you on any one of these diseases, so make sure you know them all inside out.

Q1 What symptom of measles is shown on the skin?

[1 mark]

Q2 How can rose black spot be treated so that it doesn't spread to other plants?

[2 marks]



# Bacterial Diseases and Preventing Disease

Sorry — I'm afraid there are some more diseases to learn about here. This time, they're diseases caused by **bacteria**. I don't know about you, but I'm starting to feel a bit itchy all over...

## You Need to Know About Two Bacterial Diseases

- 1) **Salmonella** is a type of **bacteria** that causes **food poisoning**.
- 2) Infected people can suffer from **fever**, **stomach cramps**, **vomiting** and **diarrhoea**. Pleasant.
- 3) These symptoms are caused by the **toxins** that the bacteria produce (see page 43).
- 4) You can get Salmonella food poisoning by eating **food** that's been **contaminated** with Salmonella bacteria, e.g. eating chicken that caught the disease whilst it was alive, or eating food that has been contaminated by being prepared in unhygienic conditions.
- 5) In the UK, most **poultry** (e.g. chickens and turkeys) is given a **vaccination** against Salmonella. This is to control the **spread** of the disease.



- 1) **Gonorrhoea** is a **sexually transmitted disease** (STD).
- 2) STDs are passed on by **sexual contact**, e.g. having unprotected sex.
- 3) Gonorrhoea is caused by **bacteria**.
- 4) A person with gonorrhoea will get **pain** when they **urinate**. Another symptom is a thick yellow or green **discharge** from the **vagina** or the **penis**.
- 5) Gonorrhoea was originally treated with an **antibiotic** called **penicillin**, but this has become trickier now because strains of the bacteria have become **resistant** to it (see page 48).
- 6) To prevent the **spread** of gonorrhoea, people can be treated with **antibiotics** and should use **barrier methods** of contraception (see page 65), such as **condoms**.

## The Spread of Disease Can Be Reduced or Prevented

There are things that we can do to **reduce**, and even **prevent**, the spread of disease. For example:

- 1) **Being hygienic** — Using simple hygiene measures can prevent the spread of disease. For example, doing things like **washing your hands** thoroughly before preparing food or after you've sneezed can stop you infecting another person.
- 2) **Destroying vectors** — By getting rid of the organisms that spread disease, you can prevent the disease from being passed on. Vectors that are **insects** can be killed using **insecticides** or by **destroying** their **habitat** so that they can no longer breed.
- 3) **Isolating infected individuals** — If you isolate someone who has a communicable disease, it **prevents** them from **passing it on** to anyone else.
- 4) **Vaccination** — Vaccinating people and animals against communicable diseases means that they are **less likely** to develop the infection and then **pass it on** to someone else. There's more about how vaccination works on page 47.

## The spread of disease — mouldy margarine...

OK, I promise, that's it. No more diseases to learn about in this Topic. You may be sick of them already (geddit?) but don't turn this page until you've got all the facts firmly attached to your cranial material.

Q1 What has made it harder to treat gonorrhoea?

[1 mark]

Q2 It is important for chefs to wash their hands thoroughly before cooking. Suggest why.

[1 mark]



# Fighting Disease

The human body has some pretty neat features when it comes to fighting disease.

## Your Body Has a Pretty Sophisticated Defence System

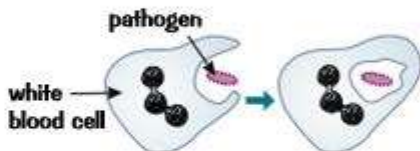
- 1) The human body has got features that stop a lot of nasties getting inside in the first place.
- 2) The skin acts as a barrier to pathogens. It also secretes antimicrobial substances which kill pathogens.
- 3) Hairs and mucus in your nose trap particles that could contain pathogens.
- 4) The trachea and bronchi (breathing pipework — see page 30) secrete mucus to trap pathogens.
- 5) The trachea and bronchi are lined with cilia. These are hair-like structures, which waft the mucus up to the back of the throat where it can be swallowed.
- 6) The stomach produces hydrochloric acid. This kills pathogens that make it that far from the mouth.

## Your Immune System Can Attack Pathogens

- 1) If pathogens do make it into your body, your immune system kicks in to destroy them.
- 2) The most important part of your immune system is the white blood cells. They travel around in your blood and crawl into every part of you, constantly patrolling for microbes. When they come across an invading microbe they have three lines of attack.

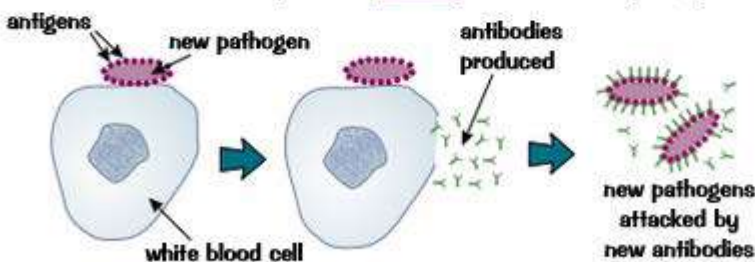
### 1. Consuming Them

White blood cells can engulf foreign cells and digest them. This is called phagocytosis.



### 2. Producing Antibodies

- 1) Every invading pathogen has unique molecules (called antigens) on its surface.
- 2) When some types of white blood cell come across a foreign antigen (i.e. one they don't recognise), they will start to produce proteins called antibodies to lock onto the invading cells so that they can be found and destroyed by other white blood cells. The antibodies produced are specific to that type of antigen — they won't lock on to any others.
- 3) Antibodies are then produced rapidly and carried around the body to find all similar bacteria or viruses.
- 4) If the person is infected with the same pathogen again the white blood cells will rapidly produce the antibodies to kill it — the person is naturally immune to that pathogen and won't get ill.



The white blood cells that produce antibodies are also known as B-lymphocytes.

### 3. Producing Antitoxins

These counteract toxins produced by the invading bacteria.

## Fight disease — blow your nose with boxing gloves...

If you have a low level of white blood cells, you'll be more susceptible to infections. HIV attacks white blood cells and weakens the immune system, making it easier for other pathogens to invade.

Q1 What is phagocytosis?

[1 mark]

Q2 How are the trachea and the bronchi adapted to defend against the entry of pathogens?

[3 marks]

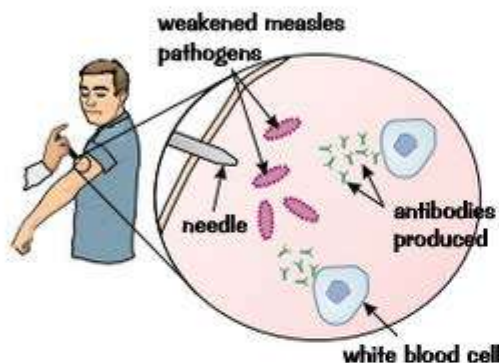


# Fighting Disease — Vaccination

Vaccinations have changed the way we fight disease. We don't always have to deal with the problem once it's happened — we can **prevent** it happening in the first place.

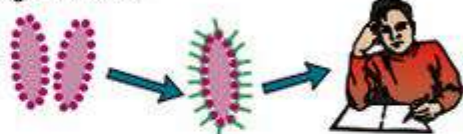
## Vaccinations Can Protect from Future Infections

- 1) When you're infected with a new **pathogen**, it takes your white blood cells a few days to **learn** how to deal with it. But by that time, you can be pretty **ill**.
- 2) **Vaccinations** involve injecting small amounts of **dead** or **inactive** pathogens. These carry **antigens**, which cause your body to produce **antibodies** to attack them — even though the pathogen is **harmless** (since it's dead or inactive). For example, the MMR vaccine contains **weakened** versions of the viruses that cause **measles**, **mumps** and **rubella** (German measles) all in one vaccine.
- 3) But if live pathogens of the same type appear after that, the white blood cells can **rapidly** mass-produce antibodies to kill off the pathogen. Cool.



If live measles pathogens try to attack...

... so you are less likely to get ill.



... they are quickly recognised and attacked by antibodies...

## There are Pros and Cons of Vaccination

### PROS

- 1) Vaccines have helped **control** lots of communicable diseases that were once **common** in the UK (e.g. polio, measles, whooping cough, rubella, mumps, tetanus...). **Smallpox** no longer occurs at all, and **polio** infections have fallen by 99%.
- 2) Big outbreaks of disease — called **epidemics** — can be prevented if a **large percentage** of the population is vaccinated. That way, even the people who aren't vaccinated are **unlikely** to catch the disease because there are **fewer** people able to **pass it on**. But if a significant number of people **aren't** vaccinated, the disease can **spread** quickly through them and lots of people will be **ill** at the same time.

### CONS

- 1) Vaccines don't always work — sometimes they **don't** give you **immunity**.
- 2) You can sometimes have a **bad reaction** to a vaccine (e.g. swelling, or maybe something more serious like a fever or seizures). But bad reactions are very **rare**.

## Prevention is better than cure...

Deciding whether to have a vaccination means balancing risks — the risk of catching the disease if you don't have a vaccine, against the risk of having a bad reaction if you do. As always, you need to look at the evidence. For example, if you get measles (the disease), there's about a 1 in 15 chance that you'll get complications (e.g. pneumonia) — and about 1 in 500 people who get measles actually die. However, the number of people who have a problem with the vaccine is more like 1 in 1 000 000.

- Q1 Basia is vaccinated against flu and Cassian isn't. They are both exposed to a flu virus. Cassian falls ill whereas Basia doesn't. Explain why.

[2 marks]





# Fighting Disease — Drugs

...a biscuit, nurse? Thanks very much. Sorry, couldn't face that last page — I'm squeamish about needles.\*

## Some Drugs **Relieve Symptoms** — Others **Cure** the Problem

- 1) **Painkillers** (e.g. aspirin) are drugs that relieve pain (no, really). However, they don't actually tackle the **cause** of the disease or **kill** pathogens, they just help to reduce the **symptoms**.
- 2) Other drugs do a similar kind of thing — reduce the **symptoms** without tackling the underlying **cause**. For example, lots of "cold remedies" don't actually **cure** colds.
- 3) **Antibiotics** (e.g. penicillin) work differently — they actually **kill** (or prevent the growth of) the bacteria causing the problem without killing your own body cells. **Different antibiotics** kill **different types** of bacteria, so it's important to be treated with the **right one**.
- 4) But antibiotics **don't destroy viruses** (e.g. **flu** or **cold** viruses). Viruses reproduce **using your body cells**, which makes it very difficult to develop drugs that destroy just the virus without killing the body's cells.
- 5) The use of antibiotics has **greatly reduced** the number of deaths from communicable diseases caused by bacteria.



## Bacteria Can Become **Resistant** to **Antibiotics**

- 1) Bacteria can **mutate** (change). This can cause them to be **resistant** to (not killed by) an **antibiotic**.
- 2) If you have an **infection**, some of the bacteria might be **resistant** to antibiotics.
- 3) This means that when you **treat** the infection, only the **non-resistant** strains of bacteria will be **killed**.
- 4) The individual **resistant** bacteria will **survive** and **reproduce**, and the population of the resistant strain will **increase**. This is an example of natural selection (see page 76).
- 5) This resistant strain could cause a **serious infection** that **can't** be treated by antibiotics. E.g. **MRSA** (meticillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*) causes serious wound infections and is resistant to the powerful antibiotic **meticillin**.
- 6) To **slow down** the **rate** of development of **resistant strains**, it's important for doctors to **avoid over-prescribing** antibiotics. So you **won't** get them for a **sore throat**, only for something more serious.
- 7) It's also important that you **finish** the **whole course** of antibiotics and don't just stop once you feel better.

## Many **Drugs** Originally Came From **Plants**

- 1) **Plants** produce a variety of **chemicals** to **defend** themselves against **pests** and **pathogens**.
- 2) Some of these chemicals can be used as **drugs** to **treat** human diseases or **relieve symptoms**. A lot of our **current medicines** were discovered by studying plants used in **traditional cures**. For example:
  - **Aspirin** is used as a **painkiller** and to lower **fever**. It was developed from a chemical found in **willow**.
  - **Digitalis** is used to treat **heart conditions**. It was developed from a chemical found in **foxgloves**.
- 3) Some drugs were extracted from **microorganisms**. For example:
  - Alexander Fleming was clearing out some Petri dishes containing **bacteria**. He noticed that one of the dishes of bacteria also had **mould** on it and the **area around the mould** was **free of the bacteria**.
  - He found that the **mould** (called *Penicillium notatum*) on the Petri dish was producing a **substance** that **killed the bacteria** — this substance was **penicillin**.
- 4) These days, drugs are made on a large scale in the **pharmaceutical industry** — they're synthesised by chemists in labs. However, the process still might start with a chemical **extracted** from a **plant**.

**Ahh...Ahh... Ahhhhhh Chooooooooo — urghh, this page is catching...**

Drug development is a big industry. And guess what — you're about to find out some more about it.

Q1 Which type of pathogen can antibiotics be used to kill?

[1 mark]



## Developing Drugs

New drugs are constantly being developed. But before they can be given to the general public, they have to go through a thorough **testing** procedure. This is what usually happens...

### There are **Three Main Stages** in Drug Testing



- 1) In preclinical testing, drugs are tested on **human cells and tissues** in the lab.
  - 2) However, you can't use human cells and tissues to test drugs that affect **whole** or **multiple** body systems, e.g. testing a drug for blood pressure must be done on a whole animal because it has an intact circulatory system.
- 1) The next step in preclinical testing is to test the drug on **live animals**. This is to test **efficacy** (whether the drug **works** and produces the effect you're looking for), to find out about its **toxicity** (how harmful it is) and to find the best **dosage** (the concentration that should be given, and how often it should be given).
  - 2) The law in Britain states that any new drug must be tested on **two** different **live mammals**. Some people think it's **cruel** to test on animals, but others believe this is the **safest** way to make sure a drug isn't dangerous before it's given to humans.

But some people think that animals are so different from humans that testing on animals is pointless.

- 1) If the drug **passes** the tests on animals then it's tested on **human volunteers** in a **clinical trial**.
- 2) First, the drug is tested on **healthy** volunteers. This is to make sure that it doesn't have any **harmful side effects** when the body is working normally. At the start of the trial, a **very low dose** of the drug is given and this is gradually increased.
- 3) If the results of the tests on healthy volunteers are good, the drugs can be tested on people suffering from the **illness**. The **optimum dose** is found — this is the dose of drug that is the **most effective** and has **few side effects**.
- 4) To test how well the drug works, patients are **randomly** put into **two groups**. One is given the **new drug**, the other is given a **placebo** (a substance that's like the drug being tested but doesn't do anything). This is so the **doctor** can see the actual difference the drug makes — it allows for the **placebo effect** (when the patient expects the treatment to work and so **feels better**, even though the treatment isn't doing anything).
- 5) Clinical trials are **blind** — the patient in the study **doesn't know** whether they're getting the drug or the placebo. In fact, they're often **double-blind** — neither the patient nor the **doctor** knows until all the **results** have been gathered. This is so the doctors **monitoring** the patients and **analysing** the results aren't **subconsciously influenced** by their knowledge.
- 6) The results of drug testing and drug trials aren't published until they've been through **peer review**. This helps to prevent **false claims**.

Peer review is when other scientists check that the work is valid and has been carried out rigorously — see page 1.

### The placebo effect doesn't work with revision...

... you can't just expect to get a good mark and then magically get it. I know, I know, there's a lot of information to take in on this page, but just read it through slowly. There's nothing too tricky here — it's just a case of going over it again and again until you've got it all firmly lodged in your memory.

- |    |   |          |
|----|---|----------|
| Q1 | What is meant by the efficacy of a drug?                            | [1 mark] |
| Q2 | Why do clinical trials of a new drug begin with healthy volunteers? | [1 mark] |
| Q3 | Why must the results from drug testing be assessed by peer review?  | [1 mark] |



# Photosynthesis and Limiting Factors

First, photosynthesis equations. Then there are some more bits 'n' bobs you should know...

## Photosynthesis Produces Glucose Using Light

- 1) Photosynthesis uses energy to change carbon dioxide and water into glucose and oxygen.
- 2) It takes place in chloroplasts in green plant cells — they contain pigments like chlorophyll that absorb light.
- 3) Energy is transferred to the chloroplasts from the environment by light.
- 4) Photosynthesis is endothermic — this means energy is transferred from the environment in the process.
- 5) The word equation for photosynthesis is:



- 6) Here's the symbol equation too:



## Plants Use Glucose in Five Main Ways...

- 1) For respiration — This transfers energy from glucose (see p.54) which enables the plants to convert the rest of the glucose into various other useful substances.
- 2) Making cellulose — Glucose is converted into cellulose for making strong plant cell walls (see p.11).
- 3) Making amino acids — Glucose is combined with nitrate ions (absorbed from the soil) to make amino acids, which are then made into proteins.
- 4) Stored as oils or fats — Glucose is turned into lipids (fats and oils) for storing in seeds.
- 5) Stored as starch — Glucose is turned into starch and stored in roots, stems and leaves, ready for use when photosynthesis isn't happening, like in the winter. Starch is insoluble, which makes it much better for storing than glucose — a cell with lots of glucose in would draw in loads of water and swell up.

## Limiting Factors Affect the Rate of Photosynthesis

- 1) The rate of photosynthesis is affected by intensity of light, concentration of CO<sub>2</sub> and temperature.
- 2) Any of these three factors can become the limiting factor — this just means that it's stopping photosynthesis from happening any faster.
- 3) These factors have a combined effect on the rate of photosynthesis, but which factor is limiting at a particular time depends on the environmental conditions:
  - at night it's pretty obvious that light is the limiting factor,
  - in winter it's often the temperature,
  - if it's warm enough and bright enough, the amount of CO<sub>2</sub> is usually limiting.
- 4) Chlorophyll can also be a limiting factor of photosynthesis.

The amount of chlorophyll in a plant can be affected by disease (e.g. infection with the tobacco mosaic virus) or environmental stress, such as a lack of nutrients. These factors can cause chloroplasts to become damaged or to not make enough chlorophyll. This means the rate of photosynthesis is reduced because they can't absorb as much light.

## Now you'll have something to bore the great-grandkids with...

You'll be able to tell them how, in your day, all you needed was a bit of carbon dioxide and some water and you could make your own entertainment. But at the moment you need to learn this page...

Q1 Name the products of photosynthesis.

[2 marks]

Q2 Apart from temperature, name three other limiting factors of photosynthesis.

[3 marks]

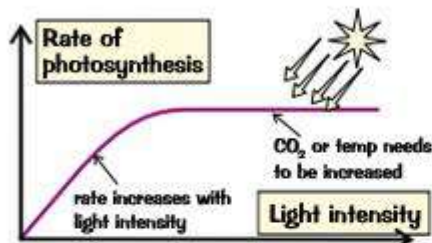


# The Rate of Photosynthesis

Now that you know light,  $\text{CO}_2$  and temperature all **affect** the **rate of photosynthesis**, you also need to know **how** they affect the rate, so you can take a gander at a load of lovely pictures... well, graphs. I've also thrown an **experiment** and an **equation** in for good measure. I can tell these pages are going to be your favourites...

## Three Important Graphs for Rate of Photosynthesis

### 1) Not Enough Light Slows Down the Rate of Photosynthesis

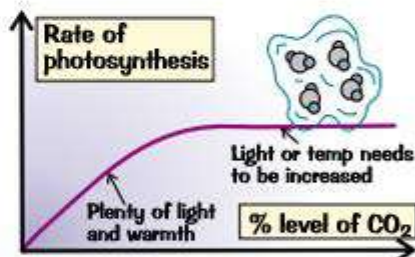


- 1) Light provides the **energy** needed for photosynthesis.
- 2) As the **light level** is raised, the rate of photosynthesis **increases steadily** — but only up to a **certain point**.
- 3) Beyond that, it **won't** make any difference — as light intensity increases, the rate will **no longer increase**. This is because it'll be either the **temperature** or the  **$\text{CO}_2$  level** which is now the limiting factor, not light.
- 4) In the lab you can change the light intensity by **moving a lamp** closer to or further away from your plant (see the next page for this experiment).

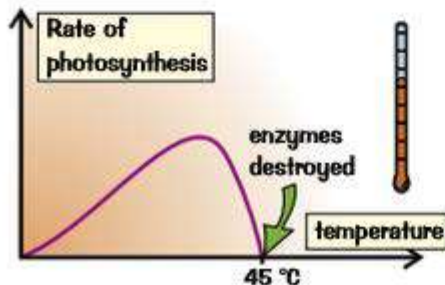
- 5) But if you just plot the rate of photosynthesis against "distance of lamp from the plant", you get a **weird-shaped graph**. To get a graph like the one above you either need to **measure** the light intensity at the plant using a **light meter** or do a bit of nifty maths with your results.

### 2) Too Little Carbon Dioxide Also Slows it Down

- 1)  $\text{CO}_2$  is one of the **raw materials** needed for photosynthesis.
- 2) As with light intensity, the amount of  $\text{CO}_2$  will only increase the rate of photosynthesis up to a point. After this the graph **flattens out** — as the amount of  $\text{CO}_2$  increases, the rate **no longer increases**. This shows that  $\text{CO}_2$  is no longer the **limiting factor**.
- 3) As long as **light** and  $\text{CO}_2$  are in plentiful supply then the factor limiting photosynthesis must be **temperature**.



### 3) The Temperature has to be Just Right



- 1) Usually, if the temperature is the **limiting factor** it's because it's **too low** — the **enzymes** needed for photosynthesis work more **slowly** at low temperatures.
- 2) But if the plant gets **too hot**, the enzymes it needs for photosynthesis and its other reactions will be **damaged**.
- 3) This happens at about **45 °C** (which is pretty hot for outdoors, although **greenhouses** can get that hot if you're not careful).

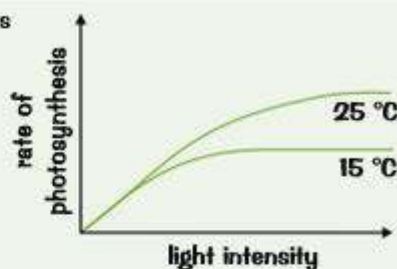


# The Rate of Photosynthesis

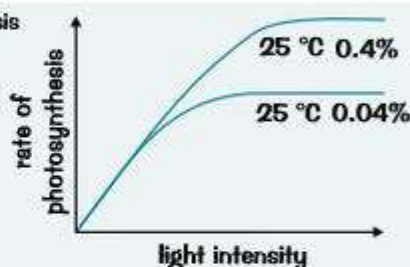
## One Graph May Show the Effect of Many Limiting Factors

You could get a graph that shows more than one limiting factor on the rate of photosynthesis, for example:

- 1) The graph on the right shows how the rate of photosynthesis is affected by light intensity and temperature.
- 2) At the start, both of the lines show that as the light intensity increases, the rate of photosynthesis increases steadily.
- 3) But the lines level off when light is no longer the limiting factor. The line at 25 °C levels off at a higher point than the one at 15 °C, showing that temperature must have been a limiting factor at 15 °C.



- 1) The graph on the right shows how the rate of photosynthesis is affected by light intensity and CO<sub>2</sub> concentration.
- 2) Again, both the lines level off when light is no longer the limiting factor.
- 3) The line at the higher CO<sub>2</sub> concentration of 0.4% levels off at a higher point than the one at 0.04%. This means CO<sub>2</sub> concentration must have been a limiting factor at 0.04% CO<sub>2</sub>. The limiting factor here isn't temperature because it's the same for both lines (25 °C).



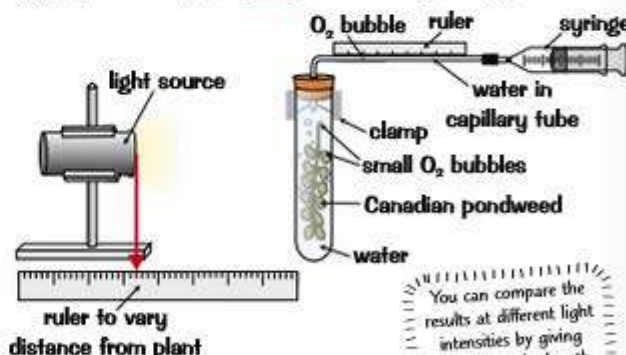
## Oxygen Production Shows the Rate of Photosynthesis

**PRACTICAL**

Canadian pondweed can be used to measure the effect of light intensity on the rate of photosynthesis. The rate at which the pondweed produces oxygen corresponds to the rate at which it's photosynthesising — the faster the rate of oxygen production, the faster the rate of photosynthesis.

Here's how the experiment works:

- 1) A source of white light is placed at a specific distance from the pondweed.
- 2) The pondweed is left to photosynthesise for a set amount of time. As it photosynthesises, the oxygen released will collect in the capillary tube.
- 3) At the end of the experiment, the syringe is used to draw the gas bubble in the tube up alongside a ruler and the length of the gas bubble is measured. This is proportional to the volume of O<sub>2</sub> produced.
- 4) For this experiment, any variables that could affect the results should be controlled, e.g. the temperature and time the pondweed is left to photosynthesise.
- 5) The experiment is repeated twice with the light source at the same distance and the mean volume of O<sub>2</sub> produced is calculated.
- 6) Then the whole experiment is repeated with the light source at different distances from the pondweed.



You can compare the results at different light intensities by giving the rate as the length of the bubble per unit time, e.g. cm/min.

The apparatus above can be altered to measure the effect of temperature or CO<sub>2</sub> on photosynthesis.

E.g. the test tube of pondweed can be put into a water bath at a set temperature, or a measured amount of sodium hydrogencarbonate can be dissolved in the water (which gives off CO<sub>2</sub>). The experiment can then be repeated with different temperatures of water / concentrations of sodium hydrogencarbonate.



# The Rate of Photosynthesis

## The Inverse Square Law Links Light Intensity and Distance

- 1) In the experiment on the previous page, when the lamp is moved away from the pondweed, the amount of light that reaches the pondweed decreases.
- 2) You can say that as the distance increases, the light intensity decreases. In other words, distance and light intensity are inversely proportional to each other.
- 3) However, it's not quite as simple as that. It turns out that light intensity decreases in proportion to the square of the distance. This is called the inverse square law and is written out like this:
- 4) The inverse square law means that if you halve the distance, the light intensity will be four times greater and if you third the distance, the light intensity will be nine times greater. Likewise, if you double the distance, the light intensity will be four times smaller and if you treble the distance, the light intensity will be nine times smaller.
- 5) You can use  $1/d^2$  as a measure of light intensity.

This is the 'proportional to' symbol.

$$\text{light intensity} \propto \frac{1}{\text{distance (d)}^2}$$

Putting one over the distance shows the inverse.

The distance is squared.

### EXAMPLE

Use the inverse square law to calculate the light intensity when the lamp is 10 cm from the pondweed.

- 1) Use the formula  $\frac{1}{d^2}$ .
- 2) Fill in the values you know — you're given the distance, so put that in.
- 3) Calculate the answer.

$$\text{light intensity} = \frac{1}{d^2}$$

$$\text{light intensity} = \frac{1}{10^2}$$

$$= 0.01 \text{ a.u.}$$

'a.u.' stands for 'arbitrary units'.

## You can Artificially Create the Ideal Conditions for Farming

- 1) The most common way to artificially create the ideal environment for plants is to grow them in a greenhouse.
- 2) Greenhouses help to trap the Sun's heat, and make sure that the temperature doesn't become limiting. In winter a farmer or gardener might use a heater as well to keep the temperature at the ideal level. In summer it could get too hot, so they might use shades and ventilation to cool things down.
- 3) Light is always needed for photosynthesis, so commercial farmers often supply artificial light after the Sun goes down to give their plants more quality photosynthesis time.
- 4) Farmers and gardeners can also increase the level of carbon dioxide in the greenhouse. E.g. by using a paraffin heater to heat the greenhouse. As the paraffin burns, it makes carbon dioxide as a by-product.
- 5) Keeping plants enclosed in a greenhouse also makes it easier to keep them free from pests and diseases. The farmer can add fertilisers to the soil as well, to provide all the minerals needed for healthy growth.
- 6) Sorting all this out costs money — but if the farmer can keep the conditions just right for photosynthesis, the plants will grow much faster and a decent crop can be harvested much more often, which can then be sold. It's important that a farmer supplies just the right amount of heat, light, etc. — enough to make the plants grow well, but not more than the plants need, as this would just be wasting money.



## With enough light, photographers can also photosynthesise...

Now don't let the inverse square law put you off learning everything on these past three pages.

- Q1 An experiment was carried out to find out the effect of temperature on the rate of photosynthesis. Name two variables that should have been controlled in this experiment. [2 marks]
- Q2 A plant is moved from 15 cm away from its light source to 5 cm away from its light source. Using the inverse square law, show that the light intensity becomes nine times greater. [3 marks]





# Respiration and Metabolism

You need **energy** to keep your body going. Energy comes from **food**, and it's **transferred** by **respiration**.

## Respiration is NOT "Breathing In and Out"

**Respiration** involves many reactions. These are really important reactions, as respiration transfers the **energy** that the cell needs to do just about everything — this energy is used for **all living processes**.

- 1) **Respiration** is **not** breathing in and breathing out, as you might think.
- 2) **Respiration** is the process of **transferring energy** from the **breakdown of glucose** (sugar) — and it goes on in **every cell** in your body **continuously**.
- 3) It happens in **plants** too. **All** living things **respire**. It's how they transfer **energy** from their **food** to their **cells**.

**RESPIRATION** is the process of **TRANSFERRING ENERGY FROM GLUCOSE**, which goes on **IN EVERY CELL**.

- 4) Respiration is **exothermic** — it **transfers energy** to the **environment**.

## Respiration Transfers Energy for All Kinds of Things

Here are **three examples** of how organisms **use** the **energy** transferred by respiration:

- 1) To build up **larger molecules** from **smaller** ones (like proteins from amino acids — see below).
- 2) In animals it's used to allow the **muscles** to **contract** (so they can **move** about).
- 3) In **mammals** and **birds** the energy is used to keep their **body temperature** steady in colder surroundings. (Unlike other animals, mammals and birds keep their bodies constantly warm.)

## Metabolism is ALL the Chemical Reactions in an Organism

- 1) In a **cell** there are **lots** of **chemical reactions** happening **all the time**, which are controlled by **enzymes**.
- 2) Many of these reactions are **linked together** to form **bigger reactions**:

reactant  $\xrightarrow{\text{enzyme}}$  product  $\xrightarrow{\text{enzyme}}$  product  $\xrightarrow{\text{enzyme}}$  product

Enzymes are biological catalysts — see p.25.

- 3) In some of these reactions, **larger molecules** are **made** from smaller ones. For example:
  - Lots of small **glucose** molecules are **joined together** in reactions to form **starch** (a storage molecule in plant cells), **glycogen** (a storage molecule in animal cells) and **cellulose** (a component of plant cell walls).
  - **Lipid** molecules are each made from **one molecule** of **glycerol** and **three fatty acids**.
  - **Glucose** is combined with **nitrate ions** to make **amino acids**, which are then made into **proteins**.
- 4) In other reactions, larger molecules are **broken down** into smaller ones. For example:
  - **Glucose** is broken down in **respiration**. Respiration transfers energy to power **all** the reactions in the body that **make molecules**.
  - **Excess protein** is **broken down** in a **reaction** to produce **urea**. Urea is then **excreted** in **urine**.
- 5) The **sum** (total) of **all** of the **reactions** that happen in a **cell** or the **body** is called its **metabolism**.

## Respiration transfers energy — but this page has worn me out...

Isn't it strange to think that each individual living cell in your body is respiring every second of every day, transferring energy from the food you eat. This energy is used to make molecules that our cells need.

Q1 Give two examples of how animals use the energy transferred by respiration.

[2 marks]

Q2 What is metabolism?

[1 mark]



# Aerobic and Anaerobic Respiration

There are two types of respiration, don't cha know...

## Aerobic Respiration Needs Plenty of Oxygen

- 1) Aerobic respiration is respiration using oxygen.  
It's the most efficient way to transfer energy from glucose.
- 2) Aerobic respiration goes on all the time in plants and animals.
- 3) Most of the reactions in aerobic respiration happen inside mitochondria (see page 11).
- 4) Here are the word and symbol equations for aerobic respiration:

glucose + oxygen  $\longrightarrow$  carbon dioxide + water



## Anaerobic Respiration is Used if There's Not Enough Oxygen

When you do vigorous exercise and your body can't supply enough oxygen to your muscles, they start doing anaerobic respiration as well as aerobic respiration.

- 1) "Anaerobic" just means "without oxygen". It's the incomplete breakdown of glucose, making lactic acid.
- 2) Here's the word equation for anaerobic respiration in muscle cells:

glucose  $\longrightarrow$  lactic acid

- 3) Anaerobic respiration does not transfer nearly as much energy as aerobic respiration. This is because glucose isn't fully oxidised (because it doesn't combine with oxygen).
- 4) So, anaerobic respiration is only useful in emergencies, e.g. during exercise when it allows you to keep on using your muscles for a while longer.

## Anaerobic Respiration in Plants and Yeast is Slightly Different

- 1) Plants and yeast cells can respire without oxygen too, but they produce ethanol (alcohol) and carbon dioxide instead of lactic acid.
- 2) Here is the word equation for anaerobic respiration in plants and yeast cells:

glucose  $\longrightarrow$  ethanol + carbon dioxide

Yeast are single-celled organisms.

- 3) Anaerobic respiration in yeast cells is called fermentation.
- 4) In the food and drinks industry, fermentation by yeast is of great value because it's used to make bread and alcoholic drinks, e.g. beer and wine.
- 5) In bread-making, it's the carbon dioxide from fermentation that makes bread rise.
- 6) In beer and wine-making, it's the fermentation process that produces alcohol.



## I'd like a ham and fermentation sandwich please... yum

Fermentation is a really important process because of its use in making alcoholic drinks and bread. We drink and eat so much of these that making them is big bucks. And it's all down to tiny yeast cells.

Q1 What are the reactants of aerobic respiration?

[2 marks]

Q2 What is the process of anaerobic respiration in yeast called?

[1 mark]



## Exercise

When you **exercise**, your body responds in different ways to get enough **energy** to your **cells**.

### When You Exercise You Breathe More

- 1) Muscles need **energy** from respiration to **contract**. When you exercise, some of your muscles contract more frequently than normal so you need **more energy**. This energy comes from **increased respiration**.
- 2) The increase in respiration in your cells means you need to get **more oxygen** into them.
- 3) Your **breathing rate** and **breath volume** **increase** to get more oxygen into the blood, and your **heart rate** **increases** to get this oxygenated blood around the body faster. This **removes  $\text{CO}_2$**  more quickly at the same time.
- 4) When you do **really vigorous exercise** (like sprinting) your body can't supply **oxygen** to your muscles quickly enough, so they start **respiring anaerobically** (see the previous page).
- 5) This is **NOT the best way to transfer energy from glucose** because lactic acid builds up in the muscles, which gets **painful**.
- 6) **Long periods** of exercise also cause **muscle fatigue** — the muscles get **tired** and then **stop contracting efficiently**.

Remember, lactic acid is formed from the incomplete oxidation of glucose.

### Anaerobic Respiration Leads to an Oxygen Debt

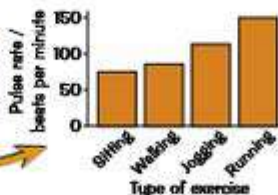
- 1) After resorting to anaerobic respiration, when you stop exercising you'll have an "**oxygen debt**".
- 2) An oxygen debt is the **amount of extra oxygen** your body needs to **react** with the **build up of lactic acid** and **remove** it from the cells. Oxygen reacts with the lactic acid to form harmless  **$\text{CO}_2$**  and **water**.
- 3) In other words you have to "**repay**" the oxygen that you didn't get to your muscles in time, because your **lungs**, **heart** and **blood** couldn't keep up with the **demand** earlier on.
- 4) This means you have to keep breathing hard for a while **after you stop**, to get **more oxygen** into your blood, which is transported to the muscle cells.
- 5) The **pulse** and **breathing rate** stay high whilst there are **high levels** of **lactic acid** and  **$\text{CO}_2$** .
- 6) Your body also has another way of coping with the high level of lactic acid — the **blood** that enters your muscles **transports** the **lactic acid** to the **liver**. In the liver, the lactic acid is **converted** back to **glucose**.

### You Can Investigate The Effect of Exercise on The Body

- 1) You can measure **breathing rate** by **counting breaths**, and **heart rate** by **taking the pulse**.
- 2) E.g. you could take your **pulse** after:

- **sitting down** for 5 minutes,
- then after 5 minutes of **gentle walking**,
- then again after 5 minutes of **slow jogging**,
- then again after **running** for 5 minutes,

and **plot** your results in a bar chart.



You put two fingers on the inside of your wrist or your neck and count the number of pulses in 1 minute.

- 3) Your pulse rate will **increase** the more **intense** the exercise is, as your body needs to get **more oxygen** to the **muscles** and take more **carbon dioxide away** from the muscles.
- 4) To **reduce** the effect of any **random errors** on your results, do it as a **group** and plot the **average pulse rate** for each exercise.

There's more about random error on page 5.

### Oxygen debt — cheap to pay back...

At the end of a sprinting race you often see athletes breathing hard — now you know this is to get rid of the lactic acid that's built up in the muscles. But remember, the liver plays a role in breaking it down too.

- Q1 Look at the graph above. Predict which type of exercise would lead to the highest concentration of lactic acid in the blood after 10 minutes. Explain your answer.

[4 marks]





# Revision Questions for Topics B3 & B4

It's all over for **Topics B3 and B4** folks. So here are some questions on them...

- Try these questions and **tick off each one** when you **get it right**.
- When you're **completely happy** with a sub-topic, tick it off.

For even more practice, try the **Retrieval Quizzes** for Topics B3 and B4 — just scan the QR codes!

## Types of Disease (p.43-45) ☐

- 1) How can bacteria make us feel ill?
- 2) How does tobacco mosaic virus affect a plant's growth?
- 3) How are mosquitoes involved in the spread of malaria?
- 4) What are the symptoms of gonorrhoea?
- 5) How can destroying vectors help to prevent the spread of disease?


☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐

## Fighting Disease (p.46-49) ☐

- 6) What does the stomach produce that can kill pathogens?
- 7) Give three ways that the white blood cells can defend against pathogens.
- 8) Give one pro and one con of vaccination.
- 9) Why is it difficult to develop drugs that kill viruses without also damaging body tissues?
- 10) Which plant does the painkiller aspirin originate from?
- 11) What two things are drugs tested on in preclinical testing?
- 12) What is a placebo?

☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐

## Photosynthesis (p.50-53) ☐

- 13) Where in a plant cell does photosynthesis take place?
- 14) What is an endothermic reaction?
- 15) What is the word equation for photosynthesis?
- 16) Why do plants store glucose as starch?
- 17) What is meant by a 'limiting factor' of photosynthesis?
- 18) What effect would a low carbon dioxide concentration have on the rate of photosynthesis?
- 19) Describe how you could measure the effect of light intensity on the rate of photosynthesis.
- 20) In the inverse square law, how are light intensity and distance linked?


☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐

## Respiration and Metabolism (p.54-56) ☐

- 21) What is respiration?
- 22) What is an exothermic reaction?
- 23) Name the products of aerobic respiration.
- 24) What is produced by anaerobic respiration in muscle cells?
- 25) What is the word equation for anaerobic respiration in yeast cells?
- 26) Name two products of the food and drink industry that fermentation is needed for.
- 27) Give three things that increase to supply the muscles with more oxygenated blood during exercise.
- 28) In what organ is lactic acid converted back to glucose?

☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐



# Homeostasis

**Homeostasis** — a word that strikes fear into the heart of many a GCSE student. But it's really not that bad at all. This page is a brief **introduction** to the topic, so you need to **naïl all of this** before you can move on.

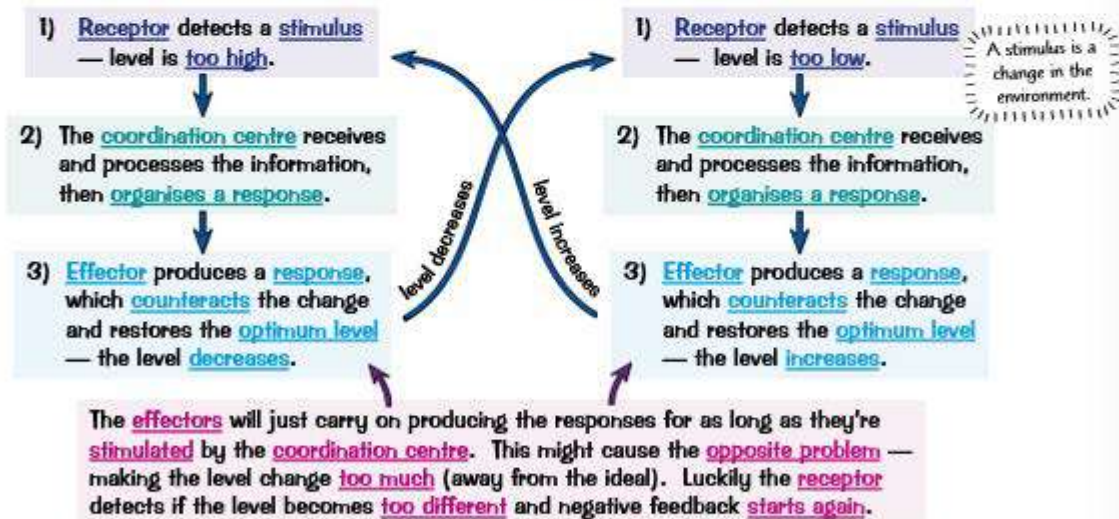
## Homeostasis — Maintaining a Stable Internal Environment

- 1) The conditions inside your body need to be kept **steady**, even when the **external environment changes**. This is really important because your **cells** need the **right conditions** in order to **function properly**, including the right conditions for **enzyme action** (see p.25).
- 2) **Homeostasis** is all about the **regulation** of the conditions inside your body (and cells) to **maintain a stable internal environment**, in response to **changes** in both internal and external conditions.
- 3) You have loads of **automatic control systems** in your body that regulate your internal environment — these include both **nervous** and **hormonal** communication systems. For example, there are control systems that maintain your **body temperature**, **blood glucose level** (see page 63) and your **water content**.
- 4) All your automatic control systems are made up of **three main components** which work together to maintain a steady condition — cells called **receptors**, **coordination centres** (including the brain, spinal cord and pancreas) and **effectors**.



## Negative Feedback Counteracts Changes

Your automatic control systems keep your internal environment stable using a mechanism called **negative feedback**. When the level of something (e.g. water or glucose) gets **too high** or **too low**, your body uses negative feedback to bring it back to **normal**.



This process happens without you thinking about it — it's all **automatic**.

## If you do enough revision, you can avoid negative feedback...

Negative feedback is a fancy-sounding name for a not-very-complicated idea. It's common sense really. For example, if you looked sad, I'd try and cheer you up. And if you looked really happy, I'd probably start to annoy you by flicking the backs of your ears. It stops things getting out of balance, I think.

Q1 Why do the internal conditions of your body need to be regulated?

[1 mark]

Q2 Name the component of a control system that detects stimuli.

[1 mark]



# The Nervous System

Organisms need to **respond to stimuli** (changes in the environment) in order to **survive**. A **single-celled** organism can just **respond** to its environment, but the cells of **multicellular** organisms need to **communicate** with each other first. So as multicellular organisms evolved, they developed **nervous** and **hormonal communication systems**.

## The Nervous System Detects and Reacts to Stimuli

The **nervous system** means that humans can **react to their surroundings** and **coordinate their behaviour**.

### The Nervous System is made up of Different Parts

#### Central Nervous System (CNS)

In **vertebrates** (animals with backbones) this consists of the **brain** and **spinal cord** only. In **mammals**, the CNS is connected to the body by **sensory neurones** and **motor neurones**.

#### Sensory Neurones

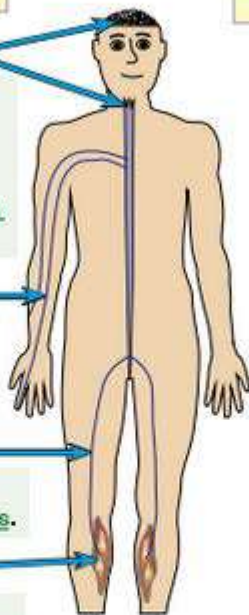
The **neurones** that carry information as electrical impulses from the **receptors** to the CNS.

#### Motor Neurones

The **neurones** that carry electrical impulses from the CNS to **effectors**.

#### Effectors

All your **muscles** and **glands**, which respond to nervous impulses.



### Receptors and Effectors can form part of Complex Organs

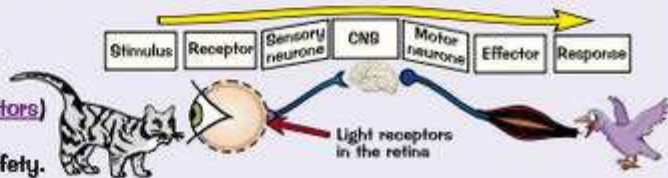
- 1) **Receptors** are the cells that **detect stimuli**.
- 2) There are many **different types** of receptors, such as **taste** receptors on the tongue and **sound** receptors in the ears.
- 3) Receptors can form part of **larger, complex organs**, e.g. the **retina** of the **eye** is covered in **light receptor cells**.
- 4) **Effectors respond** to nervous impulses and bring about a change.
- 5) Muscles and glands are known as **effectors** — they respond in different ways. **Muscles contract** in response to a nervous impulse, whereas **glands secrete hormones**.

## The Central Nervous System (CNS) Coordinates the Response

The CNS is a **coordination centre** — it receives information from the **receptors** and then **coordinates a response** (decides what to do about it). The response is carried out by **effectors**.

For example, a small bird is eating some seed...

- 1) ...when, out of the corner of its eye, it spots a cat skulking towards it (this is the **stimulus**).
- 2) The **receptors** in the bird's eye are **stimulated**. **Sensory neurones** carry the information from the **receptors** to the **CNS**.
- 3) The CNS **decides** what to do about it.
- 4) The CNS sends information to the muscles in the bird's wings (the **effectors**) along **motor neurones**. The muscles contract and the bird flies away to safety.



## Don't let the thought of exams play on your nerves...

Don't forget that it's only large animals like mammals and birds that have complex nervous systems. Simple animals like jellyfish don't — everything they do is a reflex response (see next page).

Q1 Name two types of effector.

[2 marks]

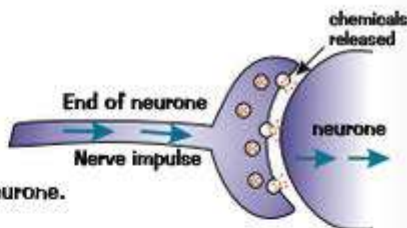


# Synapses and Reflexes

Neurones transmit information very quickly to and from the brain, and your brain quickly decides how to respond to a stimulus. But reflexes are even quicker...

## Synapses Connect Neurones

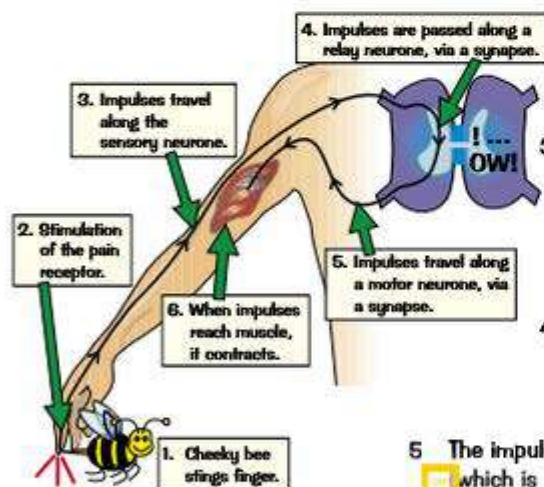
- 1) The connection between two neurones is called a synapse.
- 2) The nerve signal is transferred by chemicals which diffuse (move) across the gap.
- 3) These chemicals then set off a new electrical signal in the next neurone.



## Reflexes Help Prevent Injury

- 1) Reflexes are rapid, automatic responses to certain stimuli that don't involve the conscious part of the brain — they can reduce the chances of being injured.
- 2) For example, if someone shines a bright light in your eyes, your pupils automatically get smaller so that less light gets into the eye — this stops it getting damaged.
- 3) Or if you get a shock, your body releases the hormone adrenaline automatically — it doesn't wait for you to decide that you're shocked.
- 4) The passage of information in a reflex (from receptor to effector) is called a reflex arc.

## The Reflex Arc Goes Through the Central Nervous System



- 1) The neurones in reflex arcs go through the spinal cord or through an unconscious part of the brain.
- 2) When a stimulus (e.g. a painful bee sting) is detected by receptors, impulses are sent along a sensory neurone to a relay neurone in the CNS.
- 3) When the impulses reach a synapse between the sensory neurone and the relay neurone, they trigger chemicals to be released (see above). These chemicals cause impulses to be sent along the relay neurone.
- 4) When the impulses reach a synapse between the relay neurone and a motor neurone, the same thing happens. Chemicals are released and cause impulses to be sent along the motor neurone.
- 5) The impulses then travel along the motor neurone to the effector (which is usually a muscle, like in this example).
- 6) The muscle then contracts and moves your hand away from the bee.
- 7) Because you don't have to think about the response (which takes time) it's quicker than normal responses.

Relay neurones connect sensory neurones to motor neurones.

## Don't get all twitchy — just learn it...

Reflexes bypass your conscious brain completely when a quick response is essential — your body just gets on with things. If you had to stop and think first, you'd end up a lot more sore (or worse).

Q1 What is a reflex action?

[1 mark]

Q2 A chef touches a hot pan. A reflex reaction causes him to immediately move his hand away.

a) State the effector in this reflex reaction.

[1 mark]

b) Describe the pathway of the reflex from stimulus to effector.

[4 marks]





# Investigating Reaction Time

## PRACTICAL

On your marks... get set... read this page.

### Reaction Time is How Quickly You Respond

Reaction time is the time it takes to **respond to a stimulus** — it's often **less** than a **second**. It can be **affected** by factors such as **age**, **gender** or **drugs**.

### You Can Measure Reaction Time

**Caffeine** is a drug that can **speed up** a person's reaction time.

The **effect of caffeine** on reaction time can be **measured** like this...

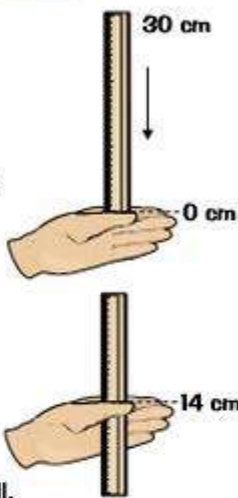
- 1) The person being tested should sit with their arm resting on the edge of a table (this should stop them moving their arm up or down during the test).
- 2) Hold a **ruler** vertically between their thumb and forefinger. Make sure that the **zero end** of the ruler is **level** with their thumb and finger. Then **let go** without giving any warning.
- 3) The person being tested should try to **catch the ruler** as quickly as they can — as soon as they see it fall.
- 4) Reaction time is measured by the **number** on the ruler where it's caught. The number should be read from the top of the thumb. The further down the ruler it's caught (i.e. the higher the number), the slower their reaction time.
- 5) **Repeat** the test several times then calculate the **mean distance** that the ruler fell.

- 6) The person being tested should then have a **caffeinated drink** (e.g. 300 ml of cola). After **ten minutes**, repeat steps 1 to 5.

- 7) You need to **control any variables** to make sure that this is a fair test.

For example, you should use the **same person** to catch the ruler each time, and that person should always use the **same hand** to catch the ruler. Also, the ruler should always be dropped from the **same height**, and you should make sure that the person being tested has not had **any caffeine** (or anything else that may affect their reaction time) before the start of the experiment.

- 8) Too much caffeine can cause **unpleasant side-effects**, so the person being tested should avoid drinking **any more caffeine** for the rest of the day after the experiment is completed.



With a little bit of maths, it's possible to work out the reaction time in seconds using the mean distance.

### Reaction Time Can Be Measured Using a Computer



- 1) Simple **computer tests** can also be used to measure reaction time. For example, the person being tested has to **click the mouse** (or **press a key**) as soon as they see a stimulus on the screen, e.g. a box **change colour**.
- 2) Computers can give a **more precise** reaction time because they remove the possibility of **human error** from the measurement.
- 3) As the computer can record the reaction time in **milliseconds**, it can also give a more **accurate** measurement.
- 4) Using a computer can also remove the possibility that the person can **predict** when to respond — using the ruler test, the catcher may learn to **anticipate** the drop by reading the tester's **body language**.

### Ready... Steady...

- Q1 Some students investigated the effect of an energy drink on reaction time. They measured their reaction times using a computer test. They had to click the mouse when the screen changed from red to green. Each student repeated the test five times before having an energy drink, and five times afterwards.

- a) The results for one of the students before having the energy drink were as follows:

242 ms, 256 ms, 253 ms, 249 ms, 235 ms. Calculate the mean reaction time.

[2 marks]

- b) Suggest two variables that the students needed to control during their investigation.

[2 marks]



Q1 Video Solution



# The Endocrine System

The other way to send information around the body (apart from along nerves) is by using **hormones**.

## Hormones Are Chemical Messengers Sent in the Blood

- 1) **Hormones** are **chemical molecules** released directly into the **blood**. They are carried in the blood to other parts of the body, but only affect particular cells in particular organs (called **target organs**). Hormones control things in organs and cells that need **constant adjustment**.
- 2) Hormones are produced in (and secreted by) various **glands**, called **endocrine glands**. These glands make up your **endocrine system**.
- 3) Hormones tend to have relatively **long-lasting** effects.
- 4) Here are some examples of glands:

### THE PITUITARY GLAND

The pituitary gland produces **many hormones** that regulate **body conditions**. It is sometimes called the '**master gland**' because these hormones act on **other glands**, directing them to **release hormones** that bring about **change**.

### THYROID

This produces **thyroxine**, which is involved in regulating things like the **rate of metabolism**, **heart rate** and **temperature**.

### ADRENAL GLAND

This produces **adrenaline**, which is used to prepare the body for a '**fight or flight**' response (see page 67).

### OVARIES — females only

Produce **oestrogen**, which is involved in the **menstrual cycle** (see page 64).

### TESTES — males only

Produce **testosterone**, which controls **puberty** and **sperm production** in males (see page 64).

### THE PANCREAS

This produces **insulin**, which is used to regulate the **blood glucose level** (see next page).

## Hormones and Nerves Have Differences

### NERVES:

Very **FAST** action.  
Act for a very **SHORT TIME**.  
Act on a very **PRECISE AREA**.

### HORMONES:

**SLOWER** action.  
Act for a **LONG TIME**.  
Act in a more **GENERAL** way.

So if you're not sure whether a response is nervous or hormonal, have a think...

- 1) If the response is **really quick**, it's **probably nervous**. Some information needs to be passed to effectors really quickly (e.g. pain signals, or information from your eyes telling you about the lion heading your way), so it's no good using hormones to carry the message — they're too slow.
- 2) But if a response **lasts for a long time**, it's **probably hormonal**. For example, when you get a shock, a hormone called adrenaline is released into the body (causing the fight or flight response, where your body is hyped up ready for action). You can tell it's a hormonal response (even though it kicks in pretty quickly) because you feel a bit wobbly for a while afterwards.

## Nerves, hormones — no wonder revision makes me tense...

Hormones control various organs and cells in the body, though they tend to control things that aren't immediately life-threatening (so things like sexual development, blood sugar level, water content, etc.).

Q1 Why is the pituitary gland referred to as the 'master gland'?

[1 mark]

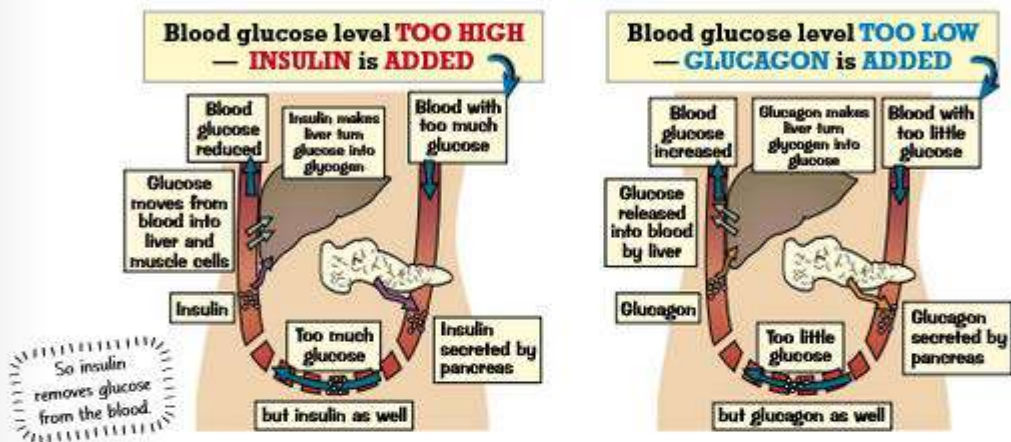


# Controlling Blood Glucose

Blood glucose is also controlled as part of homeostasis. Insulin and glucagon are the two hormones involved.

## Insulin and Glucagon Control Blood Glucose Level

- 1) Eating foods containing carbohydrate puts glucose (a type of sugar) into the blood from the gut.
- 2) The normal metabolism of cells removes glucose from the blood.
- 3) Vigorous exercise removes much more glucose from the blood.
- 4) Excess glucose can be stored as glycogen in the liver and in the muscles.
- 5) The level of glucose in the blood must be kept steady. Changes are monitored and controlled by the pancreas, using the hormones insulin and glucagon, in a negative feedback cycle:



## With Diabetes, You Can't Control Your Blood Sugar Level

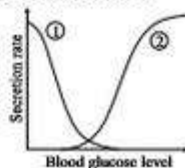
Diabetes is a condition that affects your ability to control your blood sugar level. There are two types:

- 1) **Type 1 diabetes** is where the pancreas produces little or no insulin. This means a person's blood glucose level can rise to a level that can kill them. People with Type 1 diabetes need insulin therapy — this usually involves several injections of insulin throughout the day, most likely at mealtimes. This makes sure that glucose is removed from the blood quickly once the food has been digested, stopping the level getting too high. It's a very effective treatment. The amount of insulin that needs to be injected depends on the person's diet and how active they are. As well as insulin therapy, people with Type 1 diabetes need to think about limiting the intake of food rich in simple carbohydrates, e.g. sugars (which cause the blood glucose to rise rapidly) and taking regular exercise (which helps to remove excess glucose from the blood).
- 2) **Type 2 diabetes** is where a person becomes resistant to their own insulin (they still produce insulin, but their body's cells don't respond properly to the hormone). This can also cause a person's blood sugar level to rise to a dangerous level. Being overweight can increase your chance of developing Type 2 diabetes, as obesity is a major risk factor in the development of the disease. Type 2 diabetes can be controlled by eating a carbohydrate-controlled diet and getting regular exercise.

## And people used to think the pancreas was just a cushion...

This stuff can seem a bit confusing at first, but if you learn those two diagrams, it should get a bit easier.

- Q1 The graph shows the relative secretion rates of insulin and glucagon as the blood glucose level increases. Which curve represents glucagon? Explain your answer. [2 marks]





# Puberty and the Menstrual Cycle

The monthly **release of an egg** from a woman's ovaries is part of the **menstrual cycle**.

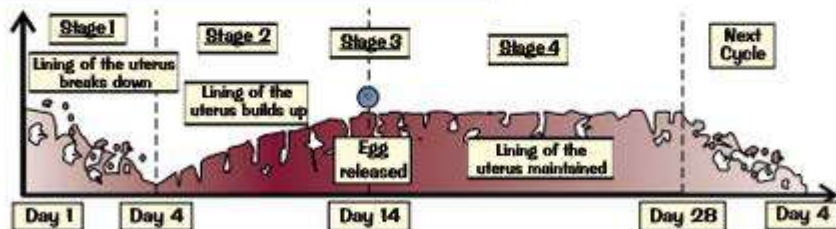
## Hormones Promote Sexual Characteristics at Puberty

At **puberty**, your body starts releasing **sex hormones** that trigger off **secondary sexual characteristics** (such as the development of **facial hair** in men and **breasts** in women) and cause **eggs** to **mature** in women.

- In **men**, the main reproductive hormone is **testosterone**. It's produced by the **testes** and stimulates **sperm production**.
- In **women**, the main reproductive hormone is **oestrogen**. It's produced by the **ovaries**. As well as bringing about **physical changes**, oestrogen is also involved in the **menstrual cycle**.



## The Menstrual Cycle Has Four Stages



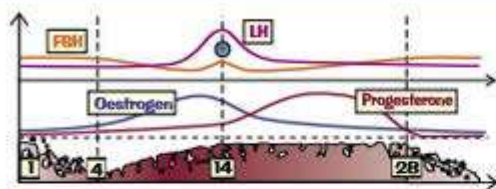
**Stage 1** Day 1 — **menstruation starts**. The uterus lining breaks down for about four days.

**Stage 2** The uterus lining **builds up again**, from day 4 to day 14, into a thick spongy layer full of blood vessels, ready to receive a fertilised egg.

**Stage 3** An egg **develops and is released** from the ovary at day 14 — this is called **ovulation**.

**Stage 4** The wall is then **maintained** for about 14 days until day 28. If no fertilised egg has landed on the uterus wall by day 28, the spongy lining starts to break down and the whole cycle starts again.

## It's Controlled by Four Hormones



### 1 FSH (Follicle-Stimulating Hormone)

- 1) Produced in the **pituitary gland**.
- 2) Causes an **egg to mature** in one of the ovaries, in a structure called a **follicle**.
- 3) **Stimulates** the **ovaries** to produce **oestrogen**.

### 2 Oestrogen

- 1) Produced in the **ovaries**.
- 2) Causes the lining of the uterus to **grow**.
- 3) **Stimulates** the release of **LH** (which causes the release of an egg) and **inhibits** release of **FSH**.

### 3 LH (Luteinising Hormone)

- 1) Produced by the **pituitary gland**.
- 2) Stimulates the **release of an egg** at day 14 (**ovulation**).

### 4 Progesterone

- 1) Produced in the **ovaries** by the remains of the **follicle** after ovulation.
- 2) **Maintains** the lining of the uterus during the **second half** of the cycle. When the level of progesterone **falls**, the lining **breaks down**.
- 3) **Inhibits** the release of **LH** and **FSH**.

## Which came first — the chicken or the luteinising hormone...

Learn this page until you know what hormone does what and understand the graphs.

Q1 Name the hormone that stimulates an egg to mature in the ovary.

[1 mark]

Q2 Where is testosterone produced in the male body?

[1 mark]



# Controlling Fertility

**Pregnancy** can happen if sperm reaches the ovulated egg. **Contraception** tries to **stop** this happening.

## Hormones Can Be Used to Reduce Fertility

- 1) **Oestrogen** can be used to **prevent** the **release** of an **egg** — so it can be used as a method of **contraception**.
- 2) This may seem kind of strange (since naturally oestrogen helps stimulate the **release** of eggs). But if oestrogen is taken **every day** to keep the level of it **permanently high**, it **inhibits** the production of **FSH**, and after a while **egg development** and **production stop** and stay stopped.
- 3) **Progesterone** also reduces fertility, e.g. by stimulating the production of **thick mucus** which **prevents** any **sperm** getting through and reaching an egg.
- 4) **The pill** is an oral contraceptive containing **oestrogen** and **progesterone** (known as the **combined oral contraceptive pill**).
- 5) It's **over 99% effective** at preventing pregnancy, but it can cause **side effects** like headaches and nausea and it **doesn't protect** against **sexually transmitted diseases**.
- 6) There's also a **progesterone-only pill** — it has **fewer side effects** than the pill, and is just as effective.
- 7) There are other methods of contraception that use hormones:
  - The **contraceptive patch** contains **oestrogen** and **progesterone** (the same as the combined pill). It's a small (5 cm × 5 cm) patch that's stuck to the **skin**. Each patch lasts **one week**.
  - The **contraceptive implant** is inserted **under the skin** of the arm. It releases a **continuous** amount of **progesterone**, which stops the ovaries releasing eggs, makes it hard for sperm to swim to the egg, and stops any fertilised egg implanting in the uterus. An implant can last for **three years**.
  - The **contraceptive injection** also contains **progesterone**. Each dose lasts **2 to 3 months**.
  - An **intrauterine device (IUD)** is a **T-shaped** device that is inserted into the **uterus** to **kill sperm** and **prevent implantation** of a fertilised egg. There are **two** main types — **plastic** IUDs that release **progesterone** and **copper** IUDs that prevent the sperm **surviving** in the uterus.



## Barriers Stop Egg and Sperm Meeting

- 1) **Non-hormonal** forms of contraception are designed to **stop the sperm** from getting to the egg.
- 2) **Condoms** are worn over the **penis** during intercourse to prevent the sperm entering the vagina. There are also **female condoms** that are worn inside the **vagina**. Condoms are the only form of contraception that will protect against **sexually transmitted diseases**.
- 3) A **diaphragm** is a shallow plastic cup that fits over the **cervix** (the entrance to the uterus) to form a barrier. It has to be used with **spermicide** (a substance that **disables** or **kills** the sperm).
- 4) **Spermicide** can be used alone as a form of contraception, but it is **not as effective** (only about 70–80%).

## There are Other Ways to Avoid Pregnancy

**STERILISATION** — **Sterilisation** involves **cutting** or **tying** the **fallopian tubes** (which connect the ovaries to the uterus) in a female, or the **sperm duct** (the tube between the testes and penis) in a male. This is a **permanent** procedure. However, there is a **very small** chance that the tubes can **rejoin**.

**'NATURAL' METHODS** — Pregnancy may be avoided by finding out **when** in the menstrual cycle the woman is most **fertile** and **avoiding sexual intercourse** on those days. It's popular with people who think that hormonal and barrier methods are **unnatural**, but it's **not very effective**.

**ABSTINENCE** — The only way to be **completely sure** that sperm and egg don't meet is to **not have intercourse**.

## The winner of best contraceptive ever — just not doing it...

You might be asked to evaluate the different hormonal and non-hormonal methods of contraception in your exam. If you do, make sure you weigh up and write about both the pros and the cons of each method. Exciting stuff.

Q1 Name two forms of contraception that reduce fertility by releasing oestrogen.

[2 marks]



## More on Controlling Fertility

Scientific advances in **understanding fertility** have led to many **infertile** women being helped to **have babies**.

### Hormones Can Be Used to Increase Fertility

- 1) Some women have levels of **FSH** (follicle-stimulating hormone) that are **too low** to cause their **eggs to mature**. This means that **no eggs** are **released** and the women **can't get pregnant**.
- 2) The hormones **FSH** and **LH** can be given to women in a **fertility drug** to stimulate **ovulation**.

**PROS**

It helps a lot of women to **get pregnant** when previously they couldn't... pretty obvious.

**CONS**

It **doesn't always work** — some women may have to do it many times, which can be **expensive**.

**Too many eggs** could be stimulated, resulting in unexpected **multiple pregnancies** (twins, triplets, etc.).

### IVF Can Also Help Couples to Have Children

If a woman cannot get pregnant using medication, she may choose to try **IVF** ("in vitro fertilisation").

- 1) IVF involves collecting **eggs** from the woman's ovaries and fertilising them in a **lab** using the man's **sperm**.
- 2) IVF treatment can also involve a technique called **Intra-Cytoplasmic Sperm Injection (ICSI)**, where the sperm is **injected** directly into an egg. It's useful if the man has a very low sperm count.
- 3) The fertilised eggs are then grown into **embryos** in a laboratory incubator.
- 4) Once the embryos are **tiny balls of cells**, one or two of them are **transferred** to the woman's uterus to improve the chance of **pregnancy**.
- 5) **FSH** and **LH** are given before egg collection to **stimulate several eggs to mature** (so more than one egg can be collected).

**PRO**

Fertility treatment can give an infertile couple **a child** — a pretty obvious **benefit**.

**CONS**

**Multiple births** can happen if more than one embryo grows into a baby — these are **risky** for the mother and babies (there's a higher risk of miscarriage, stillbirth...).

The success rate of IVF is **low** — the average success rate in the UK is about 26%. This makes the process incredibly **stressful** and often **upsetting**, especially if it ends in **multiple failures**.

As well as being **emotionally stressful**, the process is also **physically stressful** for the woman.

Some women have a strong **reaction** to the hormones — e.g. **abdominal pain**, **vomiting**, **dehydration**.



Advances in **microscope techniques** have helped to improve the techniques (and therefore the **success rate**) of IVF. Specialised **micro-tools** have been developed to use on the eggs and sperm under the microscope. They're also used to **remove** single cells from the embryo for **genetic testing** (to check that it is **healthy** — see page 74). More recently, the development of **time-lapse imaging** (using a microscope and camera built into the incubator) means that the growth of the embryos can be **continuously monitored** to help identify those that are more likely to result in a **successful pregnancy**.

### Some People Are Against IVF

- 1) The process of IVF often results in **unused** embryos that are eventually destroyed. Because of this, some people think it is **unethical** because each embryo is a **potential human life**.
- 2) The **genetic testing** of embryos before implantation also raises ethical issues as some people think it could lead to the selection of **preferred characteristics**, such as gender or eye colour.

### Nothing funny here, sorry...

Fertility treatment can help to increase the chance of pregnancy, but it can be hard on those involved.

Q1 What is the role of FSH and LH during IVF?

[1 mark]

Q2 Give one drawback to using hormones to increase fertility.

[1 mark]



# Adrenaline and Thyroxine

You've met a lot of human hormones so far, but two more won't hurt. Then that's it, I promise...

## Adrenaline Prepares You for "Fight or Flight"

- 1) Adrenaline is a hormone released by the adrenal glands, which are just above the kidneys (see p.62).
- 2) Adrenaline is released in response to stressful or scary situations — your brain detects fear or stress and sends nervous impulses to the adrenal glands, which respond by secreting adrenaline.
- 3) It gets the body ready for 'fight or flight' by triggering mechanisms that increase the supply of oxygen and glucose to cells in the brain and muscles. For example, adrenaline increases heart rate.



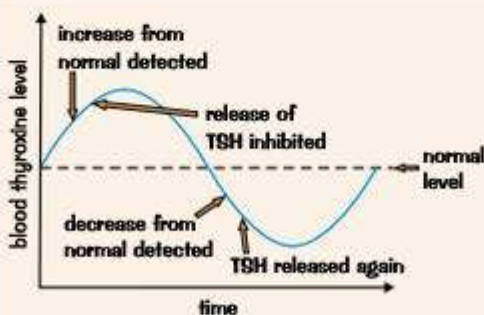
## Hormone Release can be Affected by Negative Feedback

Your body can control the levels of hormones (and other substances) in the blood using negative feedback systems. When the body detects that the level of a substance has gone above or below the normal level, it triggers a response to bring the level back to normal again. Here's an example of just that:

### Thyroxine Regulates Metabolism

- 1) Thyroxine is a hormone released by the thyroid gland, which is in the neck (see p.62).
- 2) It plays an important role in regulating the basal metabolic rate — the speed at which chemical reactions in the body occur while the body is at rest. Thyroxine is also important for loads of processes in the body, such as stimulating protein synthesis for growth and development.
- 3) Thyroxine is released in response to thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH), which is released from the pituitary gland.
- 4) A negative feedback system keeps the amount of thyroxine in the blood at the right level — when the level of thyroxine in the blood is higher than normal, the secretion of TSH from the pituitary gland is inhibited (stopped). This reduces the amount of thyroxine released from the thyroid gland, so the level in the blood falls back towards normal.

Thyroxine is made in the thyroid gland from iodine and amino acids.



## Negative feedback sucks, especially from your science teacher...

You can think about negative feedback working like a thermostat — if the temperature gets too low, the thermostat will turn the heating on, then if the temperature gets too high, it'll turn the heating off again.

Q1 Name the gland that releases thyroxine.

[1 mark]

Q2 Describe the response if the level of thyroxine in the blood gets too high.

[3 marks]

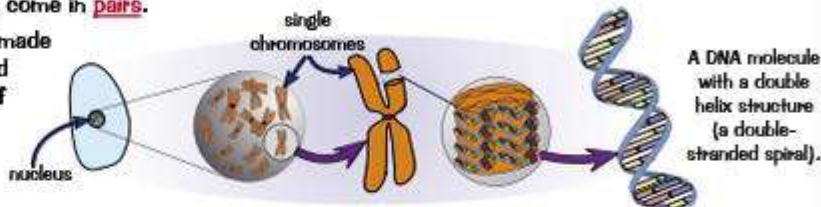


# DNA

The first step in understanding **genetics** is getting to grips with **DNA** and **genes**.

## Chromosomes Are Really Long Molecules of DNA

- 1) **DNA** stands for **deoxyribonucleic acid**. It's the **chemical** that all of the **genetic material** in a cell is **made** up from.
- 2) It contains **coded information** — basically all the **instructions** to put an organism together and **make it work**.
- 3) So it's **what's in your DNA** that determines **what inherited characteristics** you have.
- 4) DNA is found in the nucleus of animal and plant cells, in really long structures called **chromosomes**.
- 5) **Chromosomes** normally come in **pairs**.
- 6) DNA is a **polymer**. It's made up of **two strands** coiled together in the shape of a **double helix**.



## A Gene Codes for a Specific Protein

- 1) A **gene** is a small **section** of DNA found on a chromosome.
- 2) Each gene **codes for** (tells the cells to make) a **particular sequence** of **amino acids** which are put together to make a **specific protein**.
- 3) Only **20** amino acids are used, but they make up **thousands** of different **proteins**.
- 4) Genes simply tell cells **in what order** to put the amino acids together.
- 5) DNA also determines what **proteins** the cell **produces**, e.g. haemoglobin, keratin.
- 6) That in turn determines what **type of cell** it is, e.g. red blood cell, skin cell.

## Every Organism Has a Genome

- 1) **Genome** is just the fancy term for the **entire set** of **genetic material** in an organism.
- 2) Scientists have worked out the complete **human genome**.
- 3) **Understanding** the human genome is a really important tool for **science** and **medicine** for many reasons.
  - 1) It allows scientists to **identify genes** in the genome that are **linked** to different types of **disease**.
  - 2) Knowing which genes are linked to **inherited diseases** could help us to **understand** them better and could help us to develop **effective treatments** for them.
  - 3) Scientists can look at genomes to trace the **migration** of certain populations of people around the world. All modern humans are descended from a **common ancestor** who lived in **Africa**, but humans can now be found **all over** the planet. The human genome is mostly **identical** in all individuals, but as **different populations** of people **migrated away** from Africa, they gradually developed **tiny differences** in their genomes. By investigating these differences, scientists can work out when new populations **split off** in a different direction and what **route** they took.



## Insert joke about genes and jeans here...

There are so many, I thought you could come up with your own as a bit of light relief.  
Make sure that you're clued up on this stuff about DNA, genes and proteins before you move on.

Q1 What is a gene?

[3 marks]

Q2 What is an organism's genome?

[1 mark]



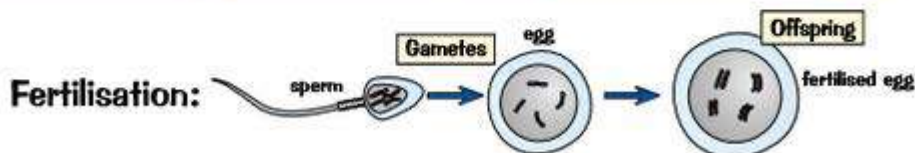
# Reproduction

Ooo err, reproduction... Surely you knew it'd come up at some point. It can happen in **two** different ways...

## Sexual Reproduction Produces Genetically Different Cells

- 1) **Sexual reproduction** is where genetic information from **two** organisms (a **father** and a **mother**) is combined to produce offspring which are **genetically different** to either parent.
- 2) In sexual reproduction, the mother and father produce **gametes** by **meiosis** (see next page) — e.g. **egg** and **sperm** cells in animals.
- 3) In humans, each gamete contains **23 chromosomes** — **half** the number of chromosomes in a normal cell. (Instead of having **two** of each chromosome, a **gamete** has just **one** of each.)
- 4) The **egg** (from the mother) and the **sperm** cell (from the father) then **fuse together** (**fertilisation**) to form a cell with the **full number** of chromosomes (**half from the father, half from the mother**).

**SEXUAL REPRODUCTION** involves the fusion of male and female gametes. Because there are **TWO** parents, the offspring contain **a mixture of their parents' genes**.



- 5) This is why the offspring **inherits features** from **both parents** — it's received a **mixture** of chromosomes from its mum and its dad (and it's the chromosomes that decide how you turn out).
- 6) This **mixture of genetic information** produces **variation** in the offspring. Pretty cool, eh.
- 7) **Flowering plants** can reproduce in this way **too**. They also have **egg cells**, but their version of sperm is known as pollen. Hmm... I'm having second thoughts about frolicking in that meadow now.

## Asexual Reproduction Produces Genetically Identical Cells

- 1) In **asexual reproduction** there's only **one parent** so the offspring are **genetically identical** to that parent.
- 2) Asexual reproduction happens by **mitosis** — an **ordinary cell** makes a new cell by **dividing in two** (see page 15).
- 3) The **new cell** has **exactly the same** genetic information (i.e. genes) as the parent cell — it's called a **clone**.

In **ASEXUAL REPRODUCTION** there's only **ONE** parent. There's **no fusion** of gametes, **no mixing** of chromosomes and **no genetic variation** between parent and offspring. The offspring are **genetically identical** to the parent — they're **clones**.

- 4) **Bacteria, some plants** and **some animals** reproduce **asexually**.



## You need to reproduce these facts in the exam...

The main messages on this page are that: 1) sexual reproduction needs two parents and forms cells that are genetically different to the parents, so there's lots of genetic variation. And 2) asexual reproduction needs just one parent to make genetically identical cells, so there's no genetic variation in the offspring.

- Q1 What type of cell division is involved in asexual reproduction? [1 mark]
- Q2 Suggest why there is variation in the offspring of sexual reproduction. [2 marks]



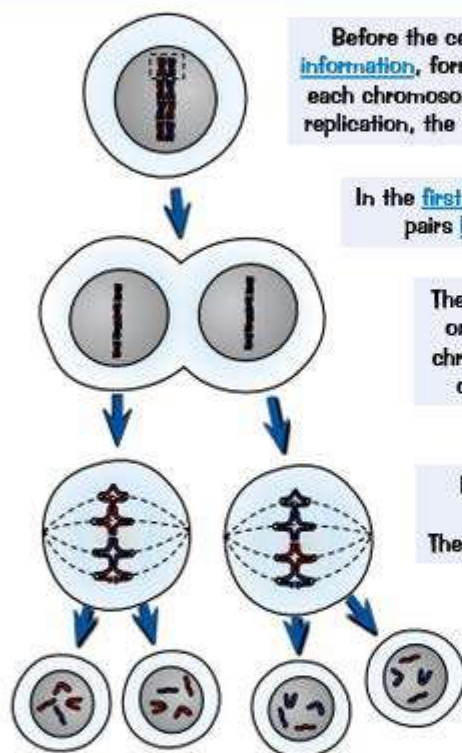
# Meiosis

Now I bet you're wondering how gametes end up with **half** the number of **chromosomes** of a normal cell...

## Gametes Are Produced by Meiosis

- As you know from the previous page, **gametes** only have **one copy** of each **chromosome**, so that when **gamete fusion** takes place, you get the **right amount** of **chromosomes** again (two copies of each).
- To make gametes which only have **half** the original number of chromosomes, cells divide by **meiosis**. This process involves **two cell divisions**. In humans, it **only** happens in the **reproductive organs** (the ovaries in females and testes in males).

## Meiosis Produces Cells With Half the Normal Number of Chromosomes



Before the cell starts to divide, it **duplicates** its **genetic information**, forming two armed chromosomes — one arm of each chromosome is an **exact copy** of the other arm. After replication, the chromosomes arrange themselves into **pairs**.

The genetic information is stored in DNA — see p.68.

In the **first division** in meiosis the chromosome pairs **line up** in the centre of the cell.

The pairs are then **pulled apart** so each new cell only has one copy of each chromosome. **Some** of the father's chromosomes (shown in blue) and **some** of the mother's chromosomes (shown in red) go into each new cell.

In the **second division**, the chromosomes **line up** again in the centre of the cell. The arms of the chromosomes are **pulled apart**.

You get four gametes, each with only a **single set** of chromosomes in it. Each of the gametes is **genetically different** from the others because the chromosomes all get **shuffled up** during meiosis and each gamete only gets **half** of them, at random.

## The Cell Produced by Gamete Fusion Replicates Itself

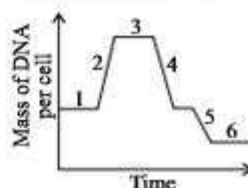
- After two **gametes** have fused during fertilisation, the resulting new cell **divides** by **mitosis** to make a **copy** of itself.
- Mitosis **repeats many times** to produce **lots** of new cells in an embryo.
- As the embryo develops, these cells then start to **differentiate** (see page 14) into the **different types** of **specialised cell** that make up a **whole organism**.

There's loads on mitosis on page 15.

## Now that I have your undivided attention...

In humans, meiosis only occurs in reproductive organs, for making gametes.

- Q1 Human body cells contain 46 chromosomes each. The graph on the right shows how the mass of DNA per cell changed as some cells divided by meiosis in a human ovary. How many chromosomes were present in each cell when they reached stage 6? [1 mark]





# X and Y Chromosomes

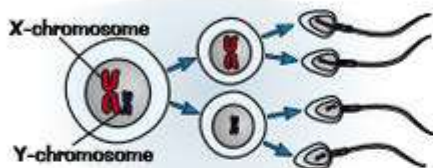
Now for a couple of **very** important little chromosomes...

## Your Chromosomes Control Whether You're Male or Female

There are **23 pairs** of chromosomes in every human body cell (page 15). Of these, **22** are **matched pairs** of chromosomes that just control **characteristics**. The **23rd pair** are labelled **XY** or **XX**. They're the two chromosomes that **decide** your **sex** — whether you turn out **male** or **female**.

**Males** have an **X** and a **Y** chromosome: **XY**  
The **Y chromosome** causes **male characteristics**.

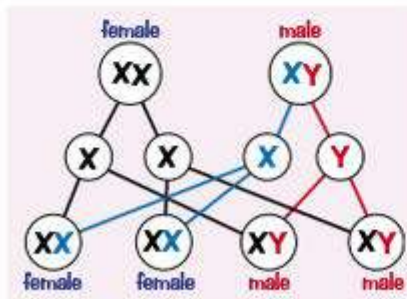
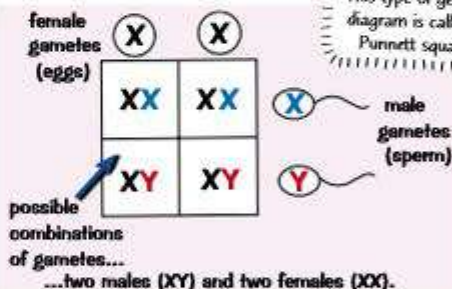
**Females** have **two X** chromosomes: **XX**  
The **XX combination** allows **female characteristics** to develop.



When making sperm, the X and Y chromosomes are drawn apart in the first division in **meiosis** (see the previous page). There's a **50% chance** each sperm cell gets an **X-chromosome** and a **50% chance** it gets a **Y-chromosome**. A similar thing happens when making eggs. But the original cell has two X-chromosomes, so all the eggs have one X-chromosome.

## Genetic Diagrams Show the Possible Gamete Combinations

- To find the **probability** of getting a boy or a girl, you can draw a **genetic diagram**.
- Genetic diagrams are just **models** that are used to show all the possible genetic **outcomes** when you **cross together** different genes or chromosomes.
- Put the **possible gametes** (eggs or sperm) from **one** parent down the side, and those from the **other** parent along the top.
- Then in each middle square you **fill in** the letters from the top and side that line up with that square. The **pairs of letters** in the middle show the possible combinations of the gametes.
- There are **two XX results** and **two XY results**, so there's the same probability of getting a boy or a girl.
- Don't forget that this **50:50 ratio** is only a **probability** at each pregnancy.



The other type of genetic diagram looks a bit more complicated, but it shows exactly the same thing.

- At the top are the **parents**.
- The middle circles show the **possible gametes** that are formed. One gamete from the female combines with one gamete from the male (during fertilisation).
- The criss-cross lines show **all** the **possible** ways the X and Y chromosomes **could** combine. The **possible combinations** of the offspring are shown in the bottom circles.
- Remember, only **one** of these possibilities would **actually happen** for any one offspring.

## Have you got the Y-factor...

Most genetic diagrams you'll see in exams concentrate on a gene instead of a chromosome. But the principle's the same. Don't worry — there are loads of other examples on the following pages.

Q1 What combination of sex chromosomes do human females have?

[1 mark]



# Genetic Diagrams

Genetic diagrams, eh. They're not as scary as they look — you just need to practise them...

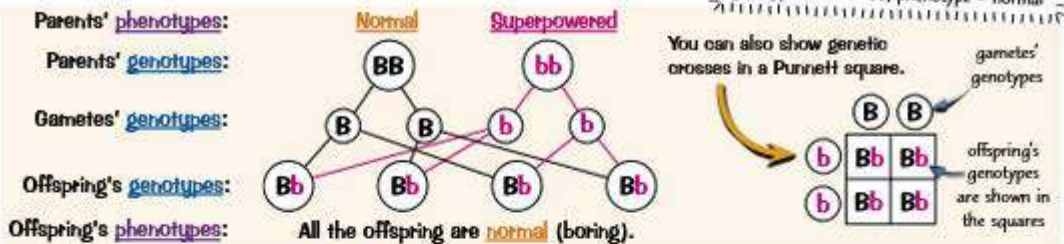
## Some Characteristics are Controlled by Single Genes

- 1) What genes you inherit control what characteristics you develop.
- 2) Different genes control different characteristics. Some characteristics are controlled by a single gene, e.g. mouse fur colour and red-green colour blindness in humans.
- 3) However, most characteristics are controlled by several genes interacting.
- 4) All genes exist in different versions called alleles (which are represented by letters in genetic diagrams).
- 5) You have two versions (alleles) of every gene in your body — one on each chromosome in a pair.
- 6) If an organism has two alleles for a particular gene that are the same, then it's homozygous for that trait. If its two alleles for a particular gene are different, then it's heterozygous.
- 7) If the two alleles are different, only one can determine what characteristic is present. The allele for the characteristic that's shown is called the dominant allele (use a capital letter for dominant alleles — e.g. 'C'). The other one is called recessive (and you show these with small letters — e.g. 'c').
- 8) For an organism to display a recessive characteristic, both its alleles must be recessive (e.g. cc). But to display a dominant characteristic the organism can be either CC or Cc, because the dominant allele overrides the recessive one if the plant/animal/other organism is heterozygous.
- 9) Your genotype is the combination of alleles you have. Your alleles work at a molecular level to determine what characteristics you have — your phenotype.

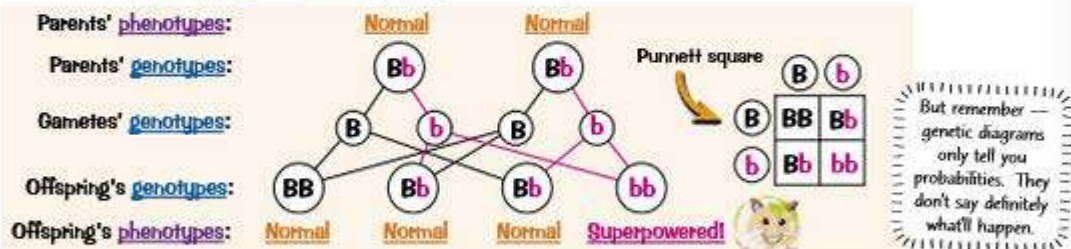
## Genetic Diagrams Show the Possible Alleles of Offspring

Suppose you start breeding hamsters with superpowers. The allele which causes hamsters to have superpowers is recessive ("b"), whilst normal (boring) behaviour is due to a dominant allele ("B").

- 1) A superpowered hamster must have the genotype bb. But a normal hamster could be BB or Bb.
- 2) Here's what happens if you breed from two homozygous hamsters:



- 3) If two of these offspring now breed, you'll get the next generation:



- 4) That's a 3:1 ratio of normal to superpowered offspring in this generation (a 1 in 4 or 25% probability of superpowers).

## Your meanotype determines how nice you are to your sibling...

You need to be able to produce and interpret both of these types of genetic diagram for the exam.

Q1 Define genotype and phenotype.

[2 marks]



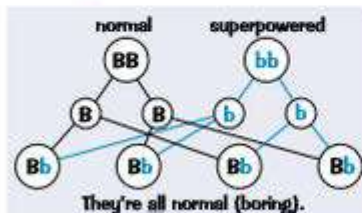
## More Genetic Diagrams

You've got to be able to **predict** and **explain** the outcomes of crosses between individuals for each **possible combination** of **dominant** and **recessive alleles** of a gene. You should be able to draw a **genetic diagram** and **work it out** — but it'll be easier if you've seen them all before. So here are a couple more examples for you. You also need to know how to interpret another type of genetic diagram called a **family tree**...

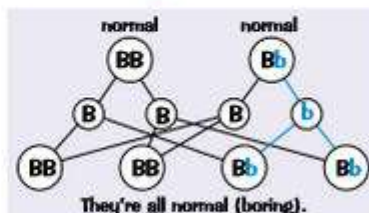
### All the Offspring are Normal

Let's take another look at the **superpowered hamster** example from page 72:

In this cross, a **homozygous dominant** hamster (BB) is crossed with a **homozygous recessive** hamster (bb). **All** the offspring are normal (boring).



But, if you crossed a **homozygous dominant** hamster (BB) with a **heterozygous** hamster (Bb), you would also get **all** normal (boring) offspring.



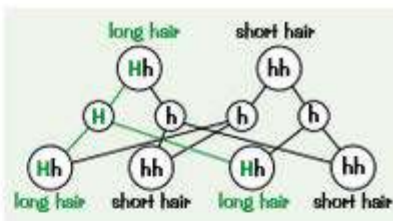
To find out **which** it was you'd have to **breed the offspring together** and see what kind of **ratio** you got that time — then you'd have a good idea. If it was **3:1**, it's likely that you originally had BB and bb.

### There's a 1:1 Ratio in the Offspring

A cat with **long hair** was bred with another cat with **short hair**. The long hair is caused by a **dominant** allele 'H', and the short hair by a **recessive** allele 'h'.

They had 8 kittens — 4 with long hair and 4 with short hair.

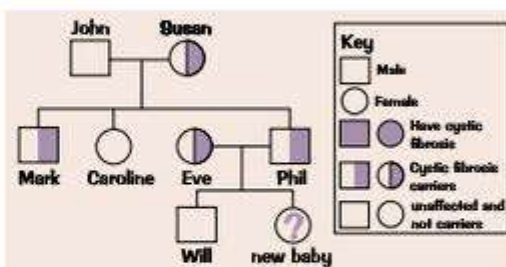
This is a **1:1** ratio — it's what you'd expect when a parent with only **one dominant allele** (heterozygous — Hh) is crossed with a parent with **two recessive alleles** (homozygous recessive — hh).



### You Need to be Able to Interpret Family Trees

Knowing how inheritance works can help you to interpret a **family tree** — this is one for **cystic fibrosis** (p.74).

- From the family tree, you can tell that the allele for cystic fibrosis **isn't** dominant because plenty of the family **carry** the allele but **don't** have the disorder.
- There is a **25%** chance that the new baby will have the disorder and a **50%** chance that it will be a carrier, as both of its parents are carriers but are unaffected. The case of the new baby is just the same as in the genetic diagram on page 74 — so the baby could be **unaffected** (FF), a **carrier** (Ff) or **have** cystic fibrosis (ff).



### It's enough to make you go cross-eyed...

In the exam, you might get a family tree showing the inheritance of a dominant allele — in this case, there won't be any carriers shown. Now, here's a fascinating practice question about peas...

- Q1 Round peas are caused by the dominant allele, R. The allele for wrinkly peas, r, is recessive. Using a Punnett square, predict the ratio of plants with round peas to plants with wrinkly peas for a cross between a heterozygous pea plant and a pea plant that is homozygous recessive. [3 marks]



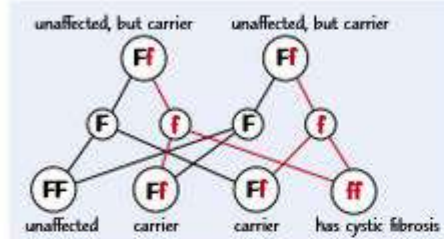


# Inherited Disorders

Some disorders can be **inherited** from your parents. Many of these can be **screened** for in embryos.

## Cystic Fibrosis is Caused by a Recessive Allele

**Cystic fibrosis** is a **genetic disorder** of the **cell membranes**. It **results** in the body producing a lot of thick sticky **mucus** in the **air passages** and in the **pancreas**.

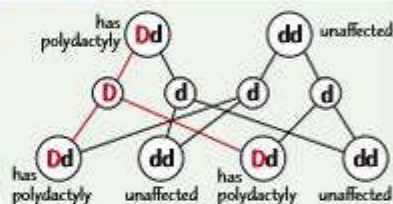


- 1) The allele which causes cystic fibrosis is a **recessive allele**, 'f', carried by about **1 person in 25**.
- 2) Because it's recessive, people with only **one copy** of the allele **won't** have the disorder — they're known as **carriers**.
- 3) For a child to have the disorder, **both parents** must be either **carriers** or have the disorder **themselves**.
- 4) As the diagram shows, there's a **1 in 4 chance** of a child having the disorder if **both parents are carriers**.

## Polydactyly is Caused by a Dominant Allele

**Polydactyly** is a **genetic disorder** where a baby's born with **extra fingers or toes**. It doesn't usually cause any other problems so **isn't life-threatening**.

- 1) The disorder is caused by a **dominant allele**, 'D', and so can be inherited if just **one parent** carries the defective allele.
- 2) The **parent** that **has** the defective allele **will have** the condition too since the allele is dominant.
- 3) As the genetic diagram shows, there's a **50% chance** of a child having the disorder if **one parent has one D allele**.



## Embryos Can Be Screened for Genetic Disorders

- 1) During **in vitro fertilisation** (IVF), embryos are fertilised in a **laboratory**, and then **implanted** into the mother's womb.
- 2) Before being implanted, it's possible to **remove a cell** from each embryo and **analyse** its **genes**.
- 3) Many **genetic disorders** can be **detected** in this way, such as cystic fibrosis.
- 4) It's also possible to get DNA from an embryo **in the womb** and test that for disorders.
- 5) There are lots of **ethical**, **social** and **economic** concerns surrounding embryo screening.
- 6) Embryonic screening is quite **controversial** because of the **decisions** it can lead to.
- 7) For embryos produced by **IVF** — after screening, embryos with '**bad**' alleles would be **destroyed**.
- 8) For embryos in the **womb** — screening could lead to the decision to **terminate** the pregnancy.
- 9) Here are some more arguments **for** and **against** screening:

### Against Embryonic Screening

- 1) It implies that **people with genetic problems** are '**undesirable**' — this could increase **prejudice**.
- 2) There may come a point where everyone wants to screen their embryos so they can pick the most '**desirable**' one, e.g. they want a blue-eyed, blond-haired, intelligent boy.
- 3) Screening is **expensive**.

### For Embryonic Screening

- 1) It will help to stop people **suffering**.
- 2) Treating disorders costs the Government (and the taxpayers) a lot of **money**.
- 3) There are **laws** to stop it going too far. At the moment parents cannot even select the sex of their baby (unless it's for health reasons).

## Embryo screening — it's a tricky one...

Try writing a balanced argument for and against embryo screening — it's good practice.

Q1 Why won't someone heterozygous for the cystic fibrosis allele have the disorder?

[3 marks]



# Variation

You'll probably have noticed that not all people are identical. There are reasons for this.

## Organisms of the Same Species Have Differences

- 1) Different species look... well... different — my dog definitely doesn't look like a daisy.
- 2) But even organisms of the **same species** will usually look at least **slightly** different — e.g. in a room full of people you'll see different **colour hair**, individually **shaped noses**, a variety of **heights**, etc.
- 3) These differences are called the **variation** within a species. Variation can be **huge** within a population.
- 4) Variation can be **genetic** — this means it's caused by differences in **genotype**. Genotype is all of the **genes** and **alleles** that an organism has. An organism's genotype affects its **phenotype** — the **characteristics** that it **displays**.
- 5) An organism's genes are **inherited** (passed down) from its parents (see page 69).
- 6) It's **not only** genotype that can affect an organism's **phenotype** though — interactions with its **environment** (conditions in which it lives) can also influence phenotype. For example, a plant grown on a nice sunny windowsill could grow **luscious** and **green**. The same plant grown in darkness would grow **tall** and **spindly** and its leaves would turn **yellow** — these are **environmental variations**.
- 7) Most variation in phenotype is determined by a **mixture** of **genetic** and **environmental** factors. For example, the **maximum height** that an animal or plant could grow to is determined by its **genes**. But whether it actually grows that tall depends on its **environment** (e.g. how much food it gets).

## Mutations are Changes to the Genome

- 1) **Occasionally**, a gene may **mutate**. A mutation is a **rare, random change** in an organism's **DNA** that can be **inherited**. Mutations occur **continuously**.
- 2) Mutations mean that the gene is **altered**, which produces a **genetic variant** (a different form of the gene).
- 3) As the gene **codes** for the **sequence of amino acids** that make up a **protein**, **gene mutations** sometimes lead to **changes** in the **protein** that it codes for.
- 4) Most **genetic variants** have **very little** or **no effect** on the **protein** the gene codes for. Some will change it to such a small extent that its **function is unaffected**. This means that most mutations have **no effect** on an organism's **phenotype**.
- 5) **Some** variants have a **small influence** on the organism's **phenotype** — they alter the individual's characteristics but only slightly. For example:

Some characteristics, e.g. eye colour, are controlled by **more than one gene**. A mutation in **one** of the genes may **change the eye colour** a bit, but the difference might not be huge.

|||||  
Alleles (see page 72)  
are genetic variants.  
|||||



Well, I s'pose  
it's time for  
some new jeans.

- 6) Very **occasionally**, variants can have such a **dramatic effect** that they **determine phenotype**. For example:

The genetic disorder, **cystic fibrosis**, is caused by a mutation that has a **huge** effect on **phenotype**. The gene codes for a **protein** that controls the **movement** of salt and water into and out of cells. However, the protein produced by the **mutated gene** doesn't work properly. This leads to **excess mucus production** in the lungs and digestive system, which can make it difficult to **breathe** and to **digest food**.

- 7) If the **environment changes**, and the new phenotype makes an **individual more suited** to the new environment, it can become common **throughout** the species **relatively quickly** by natural selection — see the next page.

## My mum's got no trousers — cos I've got her jeans...

So you can't blame all of your faults on your parents — the environment usually plays a role too.

Q1 Explain what is meant by environmental variation.

[2 marks]



# Evolution

**THEORY OF EVOLUTION:** All of today's species have evolved from simple life forms that first started to develop over three billion years ago.



Charles Darwin

## Only the Fittest Survive

Charles Darwin came up with a really important theory about **evolution**, called **evolution by natural selection**.

- 1) Darwin **knew** that organisms in a species show **wide variation** in their characteristics (**phenotypic variation**). He also knew that organisms have to **compete** for **limited resources** in an ecosystem.
- 2) He concluded that the organisms with the most **suitable characteristics** for the **environment** would be **more successful competitors** and would be **more likely to survive**. This idea is called the '**survival of the fittest**'.
- 3) The successful organisms that **survive** are more likely to **reproduce** and **pass on** the genes for the characteristics that made them successful to their **offspring**.
- 4) The organisms that are **less well adapted** would be **less likely to survive** and **reproduce**, so they are less likely to pass on their genes to the next generation.
- 5) Over time, **beneficial characteristics** become **more common** in the population and the species **changes** — it **evolves**.

## New Discoveries Have Helped to Develop the Theory

- 1) Darwin's theory wasn't perfect. Because the relevant scientific knowledge **wasn't available** at the time, he couldn't give a **good explanation** for **why** new characteristics **appeared** or exactly **how** individual organisms **passed on** beneficial adaptations to their offspring.
- 2) However, the discovery of genetics **supported** Darwin's idea — it provided an **explanation** of how organisms born with beneficial characteristics can **pass them on** (i.e. via their genes) and showed that it is **genetic variants** (see page 75) that give rise to **phenotypes** that are **suited to the environment**. Other evidence was also found by looking at **fossils of different ages** (the **fossil record**) — this allows you to see how **changes** in organisms **developed slowly over time**. The relatively recent discovery of how **bacteria** are able to evolve to become **resistant to antibiotics** also further supports **evolution** by **natural selection**. The theory of evolution by natural selection is now **widely accepted**.

## The Development of a New Species is Called Speciation

- 1) Over a long period of time, the phenotype of organisms can change **so much** because of natural selection that a completely **new species** is formed. This is called **speciation**.
- 2) Speciation happens when populations of the same species change enough to become **reproductively isolated** — this means that they **can't interbreed** to produce **fertile offspring**.

## Extinction is When No Individuals of a Species Remain

The fossil record contains many species that **don't exist any more** — these species are said to be **extinct**.

Species become extinct for these reasons:

- 1) The **environment changes** too quickly (e.g. destruction of habitat).
- 2) A **new predator** kills them all (e.g. humans hunting them).
- 3) A **new disease** kills them all.
- 4) They can't **compete** with another (new) species for **food**.
- 5) A **catastrophic event** happens that kills them all (e.g. a volcanic eruption or a collision with an asteroid).

Dodos are now extinct. Humans not only hunted them, but introduced other animals which ate all their eggs, and we destroyed the forest where they lived — they really didn't stand a chance...

## "Natural selection" — sounds like vegan chocolates...

Natural selection's all about the organisms with the best characteristics surviving to pass on their genes.

- Q1 The sugary nectar in some orchid flowers is found at the end of a long tube behind the flower. There are moth species with long tongues that can reach the nectar.

Explain how natural selection could have led to the moths developing long tongues.

[4 marks]





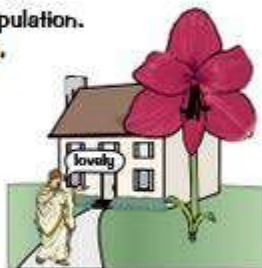
# Selective Breeding

'Selective breeding' sounds like it has the potential to be a tricky topic, but it's actually dead simple. You take the **best** plants or animals and breed them together to get the best possible **offspring**. That's it.

## Selective Breeding is Very Simple

Selective breeding is when humans **artificially select** the plants or animals that are going to **breed** so that the genes for particular characteristics **remain** in the population. Organisms are **selectively bred** to develop features that are **useful** or **attractive**, for example:

- Animals that produce more **meat** or **milk**.
- Crops with **disease resistance**.
- Dogs with a **good, gentle temperament**.
- Decorative plants with **big** or **unusual flowers**.



This is the basic process involved in **selective breeding**:

- 1) From your **existing stock**, select the ones which have the **characteristics** you're after.
- 2) **Breed them** with each other.
- 3) Select the **best** of the **offspring**, and **breed them together**.
- 4) Continue this process over **several generations**, and the desirable trait gets **stronger** and **stronger**. Eventually, **all** the offspring will have the characteristic.

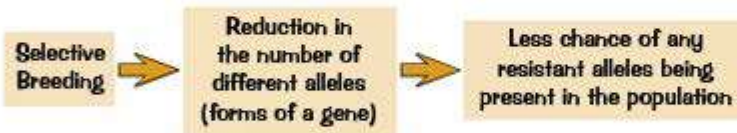
Selective breeding is also known as 'artificial selection'.

In **agriculture** (farming), selective breeding can be used to **improve yields**. E.g. to improve **meat yields**, a farmer could breed together the **cows** and **bulls** with the **best characteristics** for producing **meat**, e.g. large size. After doing this for **several generations** the farmer would get cows with a **very high meat yield**.

- 5) Selective breeding is **nothing new** — people have been doing it for **thousands** of years. It's how we ended up with **edible crops** from **wild plants** and how we got **domesticated animals** like cows and dogs.

## The Main Drawback is a Reduction in the Gene Pool

- 1) The main problem with selective breeding is that it reduces the **gene pool** — the **number of different alleles** (forms of a gene) in a population. This is because the farmer keeps breeding from the "**best**" animals or plants — which are all **closely related**. This is known as **inbreeding**.
- 2) Inbreeding can cause **health problems** because there's more chance of the organisms inheriting **harmful genetic defects** when the **gene pool** is **limited**. Some **dog breeds** are particularly susceptible to **certain defects** because of inbreeding — e.g. pugs often have breathing problems.
- 3) There can also be serious problems if a **new disease appears**, because there's **not much variation** in the population. All the stock are **closely related** to each other, so if one of them is going to be killed by a new disease, the others are **also** likely to succumb to it.



## I use the same genes all the time too — they flatter my hips...

Different breeds of dog came from selective breeding. For example, somebody thought 'I really like this small, yappy wolf — I'll breed it with this other one'. After thousands of generations, we got poodles.

Q1 Explain how you could selectively breed for floppy ears in rabbits.

[4 marks]

Q2 What potential issues can selective breeding cause?

[3 marks]



Q1 Video Solution



# Genetic Engineering

Genetic engineering is an interesting area of science with exciting possibilities, but there might be dangers too...

## Genetic Engineering Transfers Genes Between Organisms

The basic idea of genetic engineering is to transfer a gene responsible for a desirable characteristic from one organism's genome into another organism, so that it also has the desired characteristic.

- 1) A useful gene is isolated (cut) from one organism's genome using enzymes and is inserted into a vector.
- 2) The vector is usually a virus or a bacterial plasmid (a fancy piece of circular DNA found in bacterial cells), depending on the type of organism that the gene is being transferred to.
- 3) When the vector is introduced to the target organism, the useful gene is inserted into its cell(s).
- 4) Scientists use this method to do all sorts of things. For example:

- 1) Bacteria have been genetically modified to produce human insulin that can be used to treat diabetes.
- 2) Genetically modified (GM) crops have had their genes modified, e.g. to improve the size and quality of their fruit, or make them resistant to disease, insects and herbicides (chemicals used to kill weeds).
- 3) Sheep have been genetically engineered to produce substances, like drugs, in their milk that can be used to treat human diseases.
- 4) Scientists are researching genetic modification treatments for inherited diseases caused by faulty genes, e.g. by inserting working genes into people with the disease. This is called gene therapy.



- 5) In some cases, the transfer of the gene is carried out when the organism receiving the gene is at an early stage of development (e.g. egg or embryo). This means that the organism develops with the characteristic coded for by the gene.

## Genetic Engineering is a Controversial Topic

- 1) Genetic engineering is an exciting area of science, which has the potential for solving many of our problems (e.g. treating diseases, more efficient food production etc.), but not everyone thinks it's a great idea.
- 2) There are worries about the long-term effects of genetic engineering — that changing an organism's genes might accidentally create unplanned problems, which could get passed on to future generations.

## There Are Pros and Cons of GM Crops

- 1) Some people say that growing GM crops will affect the number of wild flowers (and so the population of insects) that live in and around the crops — reducing farmland biodiversity.
- 2) Not everyone is convinced that GM crops are safe and some people are concerned that we might not fully understand the effects of eating them on human health. E.g. people are worried they may develop allergies to the food — although there's probably no more risk for this than for eating usual foods.
- 3) A big concern is that transplanted genes may get out into the natural environment. For example, the herbicide resistance gene may be picked up by weeds, creating a new 'superweed' variety.
- 4) On the plus side, the characteristics chosen for GM crops can increase the yield, making more food.
- 5) People living in developing nations often lack nutrients in their diets. GM crops could be engineered to contain the nutrient that's missing. For example, 'golden rice' is a GM rice crop that contains beta-carotene — lack of this substance causes blindness.
- 6) GM crops are already being grown in some places, often without any problems.



## If only there was a gene to make revision easier...

Make sure you've got everything on this page firmly in your noggin. You need to understand the lot.

Q1 Outline one benefit and one concern about GM crops.

[2 marks]



# Fossils

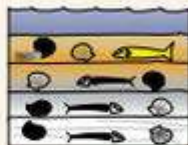
Fossils are great. If they're **well-preserved**, you can see what oldy-worldy creatures **looked** like. They also show how living things have **evolved**. Although we're not sure how life started in the first place...

## Fossils are the Remains of Plants and Animals

Fossils are the **remains** of organisms from **many thousands of years ago**, which are found in **rocks**. They provide the **evidence** that organisms lived ages ago. Fossils can tell us a lot about **how much** or **how little** organisms have **changed (evolved)** over time. Fossils form in rocks in one of **three** ways:

### 1) FROM GRADUAL REPLACEMENT BY MINERALS (Most fossils happen this way.)

- 1) Things like **teeth, shells, bones** etc., which **don't decay** easily, can last a long time when **buried**.
- 2) They're eventually **replaced by minerals** as they decay, forming a **rock-like substance** shaped like the original hard part.
- 3) The surrounding sediments also turn to rock, but the fossil stays **distinct** inside the rock and eventually someone **digs it up**.



### 2) FROM CASTS AND IMPRESSIONS

- 1) Sometimes, fossils are formed when an organism is **buried** in a **soft** material like clay. The clay later **hardens** around it and the organism decays, leaving a **cast** of itself. An animal's **burrow** or a plant's **roots (rootlet traces)** can be preserved as casts.
- 2) Things like footprints can also be **pressed** into these materials when soft, leaving an **impression** when it hardens.

### 3) FROM PRESERVATION IN PLACES WHERE NO DECAY HAPPENS

- 1) In **amber** (a clear yellow 'stone' made from fossilised resin) and **tar pits** there's no **oxygen** or **moisture** so **decay microbes** can't survive.
- 2) In **glaciers** it's too **cold** for the **decay microbes** to work.
- 3) **Peat bogs** are too **acidic** for **decay microbes**.  
(A fully preserved man they named 'Pete Marsh' was found in a bog.)



## But No One Knows How Life Began

Fossils show how much or how little different organisms have changed (**evolved**) as life has developed on Earth over millions of years. But where did the **first** living thing come from...

- 1) There are various **hypotheses** suggesting how life first came into being, but no one really **knows**.
- 2) Maybe the first life forms came into existence in a primordial **swamp** (or under the **sea**) here on **Earth**. Maybe simple organic molecules were brought to Earth on **comets** — these could have then become more **complex** organic molecules, and eventually very simple **life forms**.
- 3) These hypotheses can't be supported or disproved because there's a **lack** of good, **valid** evidence:
  - Many early forms of life were **soft-bodied**, and soft tissue tends to decay away **completely** — so the fossil record is **incomplete**.
  - Fossils that did form millions of years ago may have been **destroyed** by **geological activity**, e.g. the movement of tectonic plates may have crushed fossils already formed in the rock.

## Don't get bogged down by all this information...

It's a bit mind-boggling really how fossils can still exist even millions of years after the organism died. They really are fascinating things, and scientists have learned a whole lot from studying them in detail.

Q1 Suggest what makes low-oxygen environments suitable for the formation of fossils.

[2 marks]



# Antibiotic-Resistant Bacteria

The discovery of **antibiotics**, like **penicillin**, was a huge benefit to medicine — suddenly bacterial infections that had often been fatal could be **cured**. But unfortunately they might **not** be a **permanent solution**.

## Bacteria can Evolve and Become Antibiotic-Resistant

- Like all organisms, bacteria sometimes develop **random mutations** (changes) in their DNA. These can lead to **changes** in the bacteria's characteristics, e.g. being less affected by a particular antibiotic. This can lead to **antibiotic-resistant strains** forming as the **gene** for antibiotic resistance becomes **more common** in the population.
  - To make matters worse, because bacteria are so **rapid** at **reproducing**, they can **evolve** quite **quickly**.
  - For the bacterium, the ability to resist antibiotics is a big **advantage**. It's better able to survive, even in a host who's being treated to get rid of the infection, and so it lives for longer and **reproduces** many more times. This **increases** the **population size** of the antibiotic-resistant strain.
- Antibiotic-resistant strains are a problem for people who become **infected** with these bacteria because they aren't immune to the new strain and there is no effective treatment. This means that the infection **easily spreads** between people. Sometimes drug companies can come up with a **new** antibiotic that's effective, but '**superbugs**' that are resistant to most known antibiotics are becoming more common.
  - MRSA** is a relatively common '**superbug**' that's really hard to get rid of. It often affects people in **hospitals** and can be **fatal** if it enters their bloodstream.

The gene for antibiotic resistance becomes more common in the population because of natural selection — see page 76 for more.

## Antibiotic Resistance is Becoming More Common

- For the last few decades, we've been able to deal with **bacterial infections** pretty easily using **antibiotics**. The **death rate** from infectious bacterial diseases (e.g. pneumonia) has **fallen** dramatically.
  - But the problem of **antibiotic resistance** is getting **worse** — partly because of the **overuse** and **inappropriate use** of antibiotics, e.g. doctors prescribing them for **non-serious conditions** or infections caused by **viruses**.
  - The more **often** antibiotics are used, the **bigger** the problem of **antibiotic resistance** becomes, so it's important that doctors **only** prescribe antibiotics when they **really need** to:
- It's not that antibiotics actually **cause** resistance — they create a situation where naturally resistant bacteria have an **advantage** and so increase in numbers.
- It's also important that you take **all** the antibiotics a doctor prescribes for you:
- Taking the **full course** makes sure that **all** the bacteria are **destroyed**, which means that there are **none** left to mutate and develop into **antibiotic-resistant strains**.
- In **farming**, antibiotics can be given to animals to **prevent** them becoming **ill** and to make them **grow faster**. This can lead to the development of **antibiotic-resistant bacteria** in the animals which can then **spread to humans**, e.g. during meat preparation and consumption. Increasing concern about the **overuse** of antibiotics in agriculture has led to some countries **restricting their use**.
  - The increase in antibiotic resistance has encouraged drug companies to work on developing **new** antibiotics that are **effective** against the resistant strains. Unfortunately, the **rate of development** is **slow**, which means we're **unlikely** to be able to keep up with the **demand** for new drugs as **more** antibiotic-resistant strains develop and spread. It's also a very **costly** process.

Antibiotics don't kill viruses — see p.48.



## Aaargh, a giant earwig! Run from the attack of the superbug...

The reality of 'superbugs' is even scarier than giant earwigs. Microorganisms that are resistant to all our drugs are a worrying thought. It'll be like going back in time to before antibiotics were invented.

- Q1 Suggest a situation where antibiotics could be prescribed inappropriately. [1 mark]
- Q2 Explain why it's important that people take the full course of antibiotics they are prescribed. [2 marks]

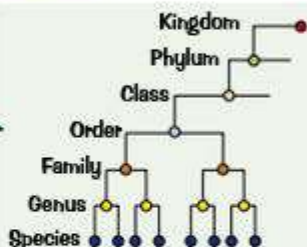


# Classification

It seems to be a basic human urge to want to **classify** things — that's the case in **biology** anyway...

## Classification is Organising Living Organisms into Groups

- Traditionally, organisms have been **classified** according to a system first proposed in the 1700s by **Carl Linnaeus**, which **groups** living things according to their **characteristics** and the **structures** that make them up.
- In this system (known as the **Linnaean system**), living things are first divided into **kingdoms** (e.g. the plant kingdom).
- The kingdoms are then **subdivided** into smaller and smaller groups — **phylum**, **class**, **order**, **family**, **genus**, **species**.



## Classification Systems Change Over Time

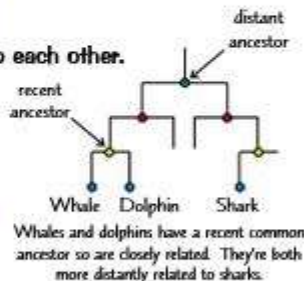
- As knowledge of the **biochemical processes** taking place inside organisms developed and **microscopes improved** (which allowed us to find out more about the **internal structures** of organisms), scientists put forward **new** models of classification.
- In 1990, Carl Woese proposed the **three-domain system**. Using evidence gathered from **new chemical analysis techniques** such as RNA sequence analysis, he found that in some cases, species thought to be **closely related** in traditional classification systems are in fact **not** as closely related as first thought.
- In the three-domain system, organisms are first of all split into **three large groups** called **domains**:
  - ARCHAEA** — Organisms in this domain are **primitive bacteria**. They're often found in **extreme places** such as hot springs and salt lakes.
  - BACTERIA** — This domain contains **true bacteria** like *E. coli* and *Staphylococcus*. Although they often look similar to Archaea, there are lots of **biochemical differences** between them.
  - EUKARYOTA** — This domain includes a **broad range** of organisms including **fungi** (page 43), **plants**, **animals** and **protists** (page 43).
- These are then **subdivided** into smaller groups — kingdom, phylum, class, order, family, genus, species.

## Organisms Are Named According to the Binomial System

- In the binomial system, every organism is given its own **two-part** Latin name.
- The **first** part refers to the **genus** that the organism belongs to. This gives you information on the organism's **ancestry**. The **second** part refers to the **species**. E.g. humans are known as *Homo sapiens*. '*Homo*' is the genus and '*sapiens*' is the species.
- The binomial system is used **worldwide** and means that scientists in **different countries** or who speak **different languages** all refer to a particular species by the **same name** — avoiding potential confusion.

## Evolutionary Trees Show Evolutionary Relationships

- Evolutionary trees show how scientists think **different species** are **related** to each other.
- They show **common ancestors** and relationships between species. The more **recent** the common ancestor, the more **closely related** the two species — and the more **characteristics** they're likely to share.
- Scientists analyse lots of different types of **data** to work out evolutionary relationships. For **living** organisms, they use the **current classification data** (e.g. DNA analysis and structural similarities). For **extinct** species, they use information from the **fossil record** (see page 76).



## Binomial system — uh oh, sounds like maths...

Sometimes, the genus in a binomial name is abbreviated to a capital letter with a full stop after it.

- Q1 The evolutionary tree on the right shows the relationship between four species, A-D. Which two species shown in the tree are the most closely related?

[1 mark] A B C D





# Revision Questions for Topics B5 & B6

You've finished **Topics B5 and B6** — Hoorah. Now have a go at these questions...

- Try these questions and **tick off each one** when you **get it right**.
- When you're **completely happy** with a sub-topic, tick it off.

For even more practice, try the  
**Retrieval Quizzes** for Topics B5  
and B6 — just scan the QR codes!



## Homeostasis and the Nervous System (p.58-61) ☐

- 1) Explain how negative feedback helps to maintain a stable internal environment.
- 2) What makes up the central nervous system and what does it do?
- 3) What is a synapse?
- 4) What is the purpose of a reflex action?

☐  
☐  
☐  
☐

## Hormones in Humans (p.62-67) ☐

- 5) Give two differences between nervous and hormonal responses.
- 6) What effect does the hormone glucagon have on blood glucose level?
- 7) Describe two effects of FSH on the body.
- 8) Which of the following is a hormonal contraceptive — condom, plastic IUD or diaphragm?
- 9) Briefly describe how IVF is carried out.
- 10) How does adrenaline prepare the body for 'fight or flight'?

☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐

## DNA, Genes, Reproduction and Meiosis (p.68-70) ☐

- 11) What is meant by 'double helix'?
- 12) What do genes code for?
- 13) What is the name for the entire set of genetic material in an organism?
- 14) Name the male and female gametes of animals.
- 15) State the type of cell division used to make gametes in humans.


☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐

## Sex Chromosomes, Genetic Diagrams and Inherited Disorders (p.71-74) ☐

- 16) What is the probability that offspring will have the XX combination of sex chromosomes?
- 17) What are alleles?
- 18) What does it mean if someone is heterozygous for a gene?
- 19) What is the chance of a child being born with polydactyly if one parent has a single dominant allele for the gene that controls it?
- 20) Give two arguments for and two arguments against screening embryos for genetic disorders.

☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐

## Variation and Evolution (p.75-76) ☐

- 21) What is variation?
- 22) Explain how beneficial characteristics can become more common in a population over time.

☐  
☐

## Selective Breeding and Genetic Engineering (p.77-78) ☐

- 23) How might farmers use selective breeding?
- 24) What is genetic engineering?

☐  
☐

## Fossils, Antibiotic-Resistant Bacteria and Classification (p.79-81) ☐

- 25) Give two ways that fossils can be formed.
- 26) What leads to the formation of antibiotic-resistant strains of bacteria?
- 27) Name the groups that organisms are classified into in the Linnaean system.
- 28) Who proposed the 'three-domain system' of classification in 1990?

☐  
☐  
☐  
☐



# Competition

**Ecology** is all about **organisms** and the **environment** they live in, and how the two **interact**. Simple.

## First Learn Some Words to Help You Understand Ecology...

This topic will make a lot more sense if you become familiar with these terms first:

- 1) **Habitat** — the place where an organism **lives**.
- 2) **Population** — **all** the organisms of **one species** living in a **habitat**.
- 3) **Community** — the **populations** of **different species** living in a habitat.
- 4) **Abiotic** factors — **non-living** factors of the environment, e.g. temperature.
- 5) **Biotic** factors — **living** factors of the environment, e.g. food.
- 6) **Ecosystem** — the **interaction** of a **community** of **living** organisms (**biotic**) with the **non-living** (**abiotic**) parts of their environment.

There's more about abiotic and biotic factors on the next page.

## Organisms Compete for Resources to Survive

Organisms need things from their **environment** and from **other organisms** in order to **survive** and **reproduce**:

- 1) **Plants** need **light** and **space**, as well as **water** and **mineral ions (nutrients)** from the soil.
- 2) **Animals** need **space (territory)**, **food**, **water** and **mates**.

Organisms **compete with other species** (and members of their **own species**) for the **same resources**.

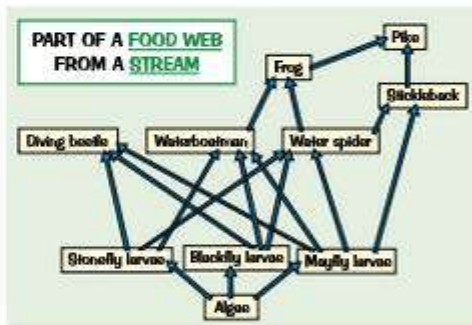
## Any Change in Any Environment can Have Knock-on Effects

In a community, each species **depends** on other species for things such as **food**, **shelter**, **pollination** and **seed dispersal** — this is called **interdependence**.

The **interdependence** of all the living things in an ecosystem means that any major **change** in the ecosystem (such as one species being removed) can have **far-reaching effects**.

The diagram on the right shows part of a **food web** (a diagram of what eats what) from a **stream**.

**Stonefly larvae** are particularly sensitive to **pollution**. Suppose pollution **killed** them in this stream. The table below shows some of the **effects** this might have on some of the other organisms in the food web.



Organism	Effect of loss of stonefly larvae	Effect on population
Blackfly larvae	Less competition for algae	Increase
	More likely to be eaten by predators	Decrease
Water spider	Less food	Decrease
Stickleback	Less food (if water spider or mayfly larvae numbers decrease)	Decrease

Remember that food webs are very complex and that these effects are difficult to predict accurately.

In some communities, all the species and environmental factors are in **balance** so that the **population sizes** are **roughly constant** (they may go up and down in cycles — see p.86). These are called **stable communities**. Stable communities include **tropical rainforests** and **ancient oak woodlands**.

## I'm dependent on the cocoa tree...

If my source of chocolate was removed, it would have far-reaching effects on my revision and grades. Seriously though, make sure you know what organisms compete for in an ecosystem. Then try these...

- Q1 Give three things plants compete for in an ecosystem. [3 marks]
- Q2 Using the food web above, suggest what might happen to the frog population if the stickleback population decreased. [2 marks]





# Abiotic and Biotic Factors

The environment in which organisms live **changes** all the time. The things that change are either **abiotic** (non-living) or **biotic** (living) factors. These can have a big **effect** on a community...

## Abiotic Factors Can Vary in an Ecosystem...

Abiotic factors are **non-living** factors. For example:

- 1) **Moisture level**
- 2) **Light intensity**
- 3) **Temperature**
- 4) **Carbon dioxide level** (for plants)
- 5) **Wind intensity and direction**
- 6) **Oxygen level** (for aquatic animals)
- 7) **Soil pH and mineral content**

A **change** in the environment could be an **increase** or **decrease** in an abiotic factor, e.g. an increase in temperature. These changes can affect the **size** of **populations** in a **community**. This means they can also affect the **population sizes** of other organisms that **depend** on them (see previous page).

For example, a **decrease** in light intensity, temperature or level of carbon dioxide could **decrease** the **rate of photosynthesis** in a plant species (see p.50). This could affect **plant growth** and cause a **decrease** in the **population size**.

For example, a **decrease** in the **mineral content** of the soil (e.g. a lack of nitrates) could cause **nutrient deficiencies**. This could also affect **plant growth** and cause a **decrease** in the **population size**.

Animals depend on plants for food, so a decrease in a plant population could affect the animal species in a community.

## ...and So Can Biotic Factors

Biotic factors are **living** factors. Here are some examples:

- 1) **New predators** arriving
- 2) **Competition** — one species may outcompete another so that numbers are too low to breed
- 3) **New pathogens**
- 4) **Availability of food**

A **change** in the environment could be the introduction of a **new** biotic factor, e.g. a new predator or pathogen. These changes can also affect the **size** of **populations** in a **community**, which can have **knock-on effects** because of interdependence (see previous page).

For example, a new predator could cause a decrease in the **prey** population. There's more about predator-prey populations on p.86.

For example, red and grey **squirrels** live in the same habitat and eat the same food. Grey squirrels outcompete the red squirrels — so the **population** of red squirrels is **decreasing**.



The following graph shows the effect of a **new pathogen** on **Species A**. The population size of species A was **increasing** up until 1985, when it **decreased rapidly** until 1990 — suggesting that **1985** was the year that the new pathogen arrived. The population started to **rise** again after 1990.



## Exams — a type of abiotic factor affecting my environment...

So, two lists of factors that would be a good idea to learn. I reckon this is a prime time for shutting the book, scribbling them all down and then checking how you did. It's the only way they'll get firmly wedged in your brain.

- Q1 Give four examples of abiotic factors that could affect a plant species. [4 marks]
- Q2 Cutthroat trout are present in lakes in Yellowstone National Park. In the last few decades, lake trout have been introduced to the lakes. However, lake trout have emerged as predators of the cutthroat trout. Give two other biotic factors that could affect the size of the cutthroat trout population. [2 marks]



# Adaptations

Life exists in so many **different environments** because the **organisms** that live in them have **adapted** to them.

## Adaptations Allow Organisms to Survive

**Organisms**, including **microorganisms**, are **adapted** to live in different environmental **conditions**. The **features** or **characteristics** that allow them to do this are called **adaptations**. Adaptations can be:

### 1) Structural

These are **features** of an organism's **body structure** — such as **shape** or **colour**. For example:

**Arctic** animals like the **Arctic fox** have **white fur** so they're **camouflaged** against the snow. This helps them **avoid predators** and **sneak up on prey**.



Animals that live in **cold** places (like **whales**) have a **thick layer of blubber** (fat) and a **low surface area to volume ratio** to help them **retain heat**.



Animals that live in **hot** places (like **camels**) have a thin layer of fat and a **large surface area to volume ratio** to help them **lose heat**.



### 2) Behavioural

These are ways that organisms **behave**. Many species (e.g. **swallows**) **migrate** to **warmer climates** during the **winter** to **avoid** the problems of living in **cold conditions**.

### 3) Functional

These are things that go on **inside** an organism's **body** that can be **related** to **processes** like **reproduction** and **metabolism** (all the chemical reactions happening in the body). For example:

**Desert** animals **conserve water** by producing **very little sweat** and **small amounts of concentrated urine**.

**Brown bears hibernate** over **winter**. They **lower their metabolism** which **conserves energy**, so they **don't have to hunt** when there's **not much food** about.



## Microorganisms Have a Huge Variety of Adaptations...

...so that they can live in a **wide range** of environments:

Some **microorganisms** (e.g. bacteria) are known as **extremophiles** — they're adapted to live in **very extreme conditions**. For example, some can live at **high temperatures** (e.g. in super hot volcanic vents), and others can live in places with a **high salt concentration** (e.g. very salty lakes) or at **high pressure** (e.g. deep sea vents).



## In a nutshell, it's horses for courses...

In the exam, you might have to say how an organism is adapted to its environment. Look at its characteristics (e.g. colour/shape) as well as the conditions it has to cope with (e.g. predation/temperature) and you'll be sorted.

Q1 The diagram on the right shows a penguin. Penguins live in the cold, icy environment of the Antarctic. They swim in the sea to hunt for fish to eat. Some penguins also huddle together in large groups to keep warm.

- What type of adaptation is being described when penguins 'huddle together'? [1 mark]
- Explain one structural adaptation a penguin has to its environment. [2 marks]





# Food Chains

If you like **food**, and you like **chains**, then **food chains** might just blow your mind. Strap yourself in and prepare for some 'edge of your seat' learning, because the show is about to begin...

## Food Chains Show What's Eaten by What in an Ecosystem

- 1) **Food chains** always start with a **producer**. Producers **make** (produce) **their own food** using energy from the Sun.
- 2) Producers are usually **green plants** or **algae** — they make **glucose** by **photosynthesis** (see page 50).
- 3) When a green plant produces glucose, some of it is used to make **other biological molecules** in the plant.
- 4) These biological molecules are the plant's **biomass** — the **mass** of **living material**.
- 5) Biomass can be thought of as **energy stored** in a plant.
- 6) **Energy** is **transferred** through living organisms in an ecosystem when organisms **eat** other organisms.
- 7) Producers are eaten by **primary consumers**. Primary consumers are then eaten by **secondary consumers** and secondary consumers are eaten by **tertiary consumers**. Here's an example of a food chain:



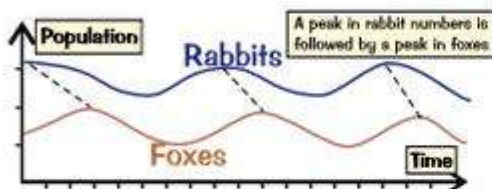
Consumers are organisms that eat other organisms. 'Primary' means 'first', so primary consumers are the first consumers in a food chain. Secondary consumers are second and tertiary consumers are third.

## Populations of Prey and Predators Go in Cycles

Consumers that **hunt and kill** other animals are called **predators**, and their **prey** are what they eat. In a **stable community** containing **prey** and **predators** (as most of them do of course):

- 1) The **population** of any species is usually **limited** by the amount of **food** available.
- 2) If the population of the **prey** increases, then so will the population of the **predators**.
- 3) However as the population of predators **increases**, the number of prey will **decrease**.

For more about a stable community see page 83.



E.g. **More grass** means **more rabbits**.  
**More rabbits** means **more foxes**.  
**But more foxes** means **fewer rabbits**.  
**Eventually fewer rabbits** will mean **fewer foxes again**.  
 This **up and down pattern** continues...

- 4) Predator-prey cycles are always **out of phase** with each other. This is because it **takes a while** for one population to **respond** to changes in the other population. E.g. when the number of rabbits goes up, the number of foxes doesn't increase immediately because it takes time for them to reproduce.

## When the TV volume goes up... my revision goes down...

You might think that the start of a food chain always has to be a plant. In most cases it is, but sometimes organisms like algae can be too because they photosynthesise. No wonder algae always looks smug...

Q1 Look at the following food chain for a particular area: grass → grasshopper → rat → snake

- a) Name the producer in the food chain. [1 mark]
- b) How many consumers are there in the food chain? [1 mark]
- c) Name the primary consumer in the food chain. [1 mark]
- d) All the rats in the area are killed.  
 Explain two effects that this could have on the food chain. [4 marks]





# Using Quadrats

## PRACTICAL

This is where the **fun** starts. Studying **ecology** gives you the chance to **rummage around** in bushes, get your hands **dirty** and look at some **real organisms**, living in the **wild**. Hold on to your hats folks...

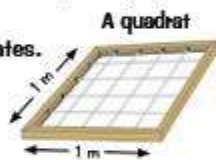
### Organisms Live in Different Places Because The Environment Varies

- As you know from page 83, a **habitat** is the place where an organism **lives**, e.g. a playing field.
- The **distribution** of an organism is **where** an organism is **found**, e.g. in a part of the playing field.
- Where an organism is found is affected by **environmental factors** (see page 84). An organism might be **more common** in **one area** than another due to **differences** in environmental factors between the two areas. For example, in the playing field, you might find that daisies are **more common** in the open than under trees, because there's **more light** available in the open.
- There are a couple of ways to **study** the distribution of an organism. You can:
  - measure** how common an organism is in **two sample areas** (e.g. using **quadrats**) and compare them.
  - study how the distribution **changes** across an area, e.g. by placing quadrats along a **transect** (p.88).
 Both of these methods give **quantitative** data (numbers) about the distribution.

### Use Quadrats to Study The Distribution of Small Organisms

A **quadrat** is a **square** frame enclosing a **known area**, e.g.  $1 \text{ m}^2$ . To compare **how common** an organism is in **two sample areas** (e.g. shady and sunny spots in that playing field) just follow these simple steps:

- Place a  **$1 \text{ m}^2$  quadrat** on the ground at a **random point** within the **first** sample area.  
E.g. divide the area into a grid and use a random number generator to pick coordinates.
- Count** all the organisms **within** the quadrat.
- Repeat** steps 1 and 2 as many times as you can.
- Work out** the **mean** number of organisms per quadrat within the first sample area.



#### EXAMPLE

Anna counted the number of daisies in 7 quadrats within her first sample area and recorded the following results: 18, 20, 22, 23, 23, 23, 25

Here the MEAN is:  $\frac{\text{TOTAL number of organisms}}{\text{NUMBER of quadrats}} = \frac{154}{7} = 22 \text{ daisies per quadrat}$

- Repeat** steps 1 to 4 in the **second** sample area.
- Finally **compare** the two means. E.g. you might find 2 daisies per  $\text{m}^2$  in the shade, and 22 daisies per  $\text{m}^2$  (lots more) in the open field.

### You Can Also Work Out the Population Size of an Organism in One Area

#### EXAMPLE

Students used quadrats, each with an area of  $0.5 \text{ m}^2$ , to randomly sample daisies on an open field. The students found a mean of 10.5 daisies per quadrat. The field had an area of  $800 \text{ m}^2$ . Estimate the population of daisies on the field.

- Work out the **mean number of organisms per  $\text{m}^2$** .  
 $1 \div 0.5 = 2$   
 $2 \times 10.5 = 21 \text{ daisies per } \text{m}^2$
- Then multiply the **mean** by the **total area** (in  $\text{m}^2$ ) of the habitat.  
 $800 \times 21 = 16\,800$   
**daisies on the open field**

The population size of an organism is sometimes called its abundance.

If your quadrat has an area of  $1 \text{ m}^2$ , the mean number of organisms per  $\text{m}^2$  is just the same as the mean number per quadrat.

### Drat, drat, and double drat — my favourite use of quadrats...

It's key that you make sure you put your quadrat down in a random place before you start counting.

- Q1 A  $1200 \text{ m}^2$  field was randomly sampled for buttercups using a quadrat with an area of  $0.25 \text{ m}^2$ . A mean of 0.75 buttercups were found per quadrat. Estimate the total population of buttercups.

[2 marks]



Q1 Video Solution



## PRACTICAL

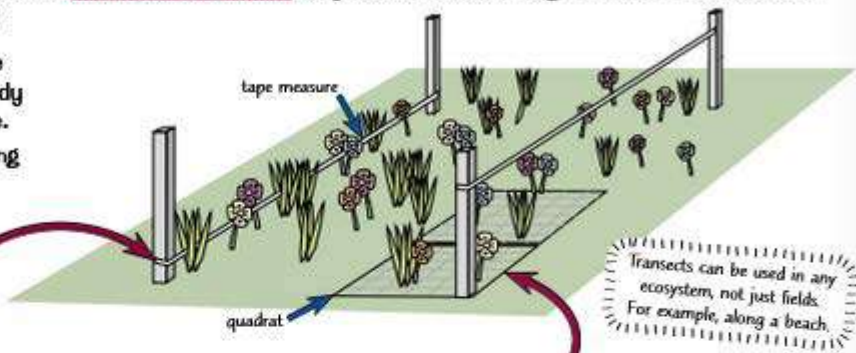
## Using Transects

So, now you think you've learnt all about distribution. Well hold on — there's more ecology fun to be had.

## Use Transects to Study The Distribution of Organisms Along a Line

You can use lines called transects to help find out how organisms (like plants) are distributed across an area — e.g. if an organism becomes more or less common as you move from a hedge towards the middle of a field. Here's what to do:

- 1) Mark out a line in the area you want to study using a tape measure.
- 2) Then collect data along the line.
- 3) You can do this by just counting all the organisms you're interested in that touch the line.
- 4) Or, you can collect data by using quadrats (see previous page). These can be placed next to each other along the line or at intervals, for example, every 2 m.

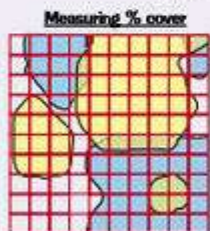


## You Can Estimate the Percentage Cover of a Quadrat

If it's difficult to count all the individual organisms in the quadrat (e.g. if they're grass) you can calculate the percentage cover. This means estimating the percentage area of the quadrat covered by a particular type of organism, e.g. by counting the number of little squares covered by the organisms.

## EXAMPLE

Some students were measuring the distribution of organisms from one corner of a school playing field to another, using quadrats placed at regular intervals along a transect. Below is a picture of one of the quadrats. Calculate the percentage cover of each organism, A and B.



You count a square if it's more than half covered.

- 1) Count the number of squares covered by organism A.
- 2) Make this into a percentage — divide the number of squares covered by the organism by the total number of squares in the quadrat (100), then multiply the result by 100.
- 3) Do the same for organism B.

Type A = 42 squares

$$(42/100) \times 100 = 0.42 \times 100 = 42\%$$

Type B = 47 squares

$$(47/100) \times 100 = 0.47 \times 100 = 47\%$$

## A slug that's been run over — definitely a widely-spread organism

So if you want to measure the distribution of an organism across an area, you could use a transect. You can either use them alone or along with quadrats. Now who's for a game of tennis... I've got my transect up.

- Q1 What is a transect? [1 mark]
- Q2 Some students want to measure how the distribution of dandelions changes across a field, from one corner to another. Describe a method they could use to do this. [2 marks]
- Q3 How could you estimate the number of organisms in a quadrat, if they are difficult to count? [1 mark]



# The Water Cycle

**Water** on planet Earth is constantly **recycled**. This is lucky for us because **without water**, we **wouldn't survive**. And I don't just mean there'd be no paddling pools, ice lollies or bubble baths...

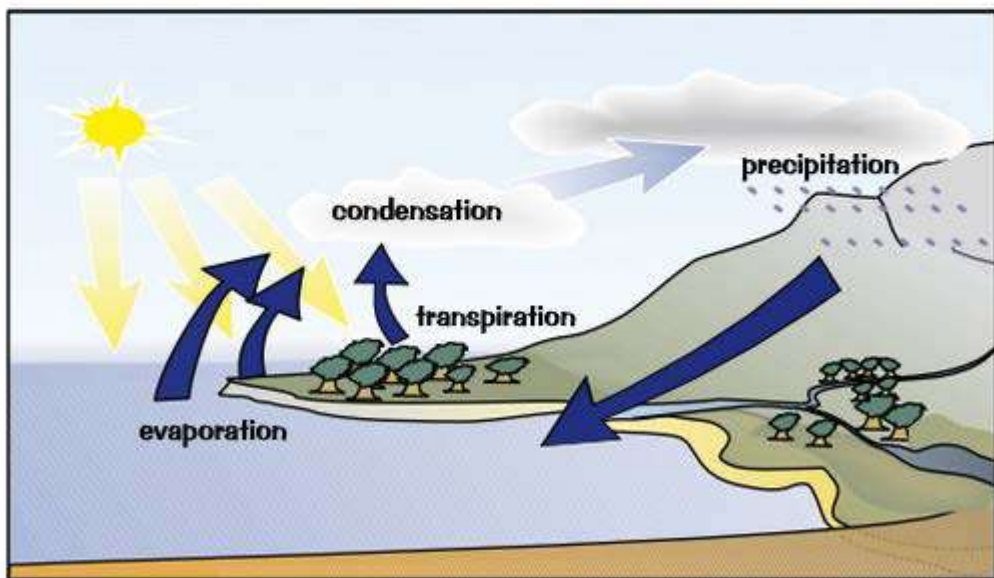
## The Water Cycle Means Water is Endlessly Recycled

The water here on planet Earth is constantly **recycled**. Strange but true...

There has only ever been a fixed amount of water on the Earth.

- 1) **Energy** from the **Sun** makes water **evaporate** from the land and sea, turning it into **water vapour**.
- 2) Water also evaporates from plants — this is known as **transpiration** (see p.40).
- 3) The warm water vapour is **carried upwards** (as warm air rises). When it gets higher up it **cools** and **condenses** to form **clouds**.
- 4) Water falls from the clouds as **precipitation** (usually rain, but sometimes snow or hail) onto **land**, where it provides **fresh water** for **plants** and **animals**.
- 5) Some of this water is **absorbed** by the **soil** and is taken up by **plant roots**. This provides plants with **fresh water** for things like **photosynthesis**. Some of the water taken up by plants becomes part of the plants' **tissues** and is passed along to **animals** in **food chains**.
- 6) Like plants, animals need water for the **chemical reactions** that happen in their bodies. Animals **return water** to the **soil** and **atmosphere** through **excretion** (processes that get rid of the waste products of chemical reactions, e.g. sweating, urination and breathing out).
- 7) Water that doesn't get absorbed by the soil will **runoff** into **streams** and **rivers**.
- 8) From here, the water then **drains** back into the **sea**, before it **evaporates** all over **again**.

Animals also get fresh water by drinking from streams and rivers.



## Come on out, it's only a little water cycle, it won't hurt you...

The most important thing to remember is that it's a cycle — a continuous process with no beginning or end. Water that falls to the ground as rain (or any other kind of precipitation) will eventually end up back in the clouds again.

- Q1 a) In the water cycle, how does water move from the land into the air? [1 mark]  
 b) How does the water cycle benefit plants and animals? [1 mark]



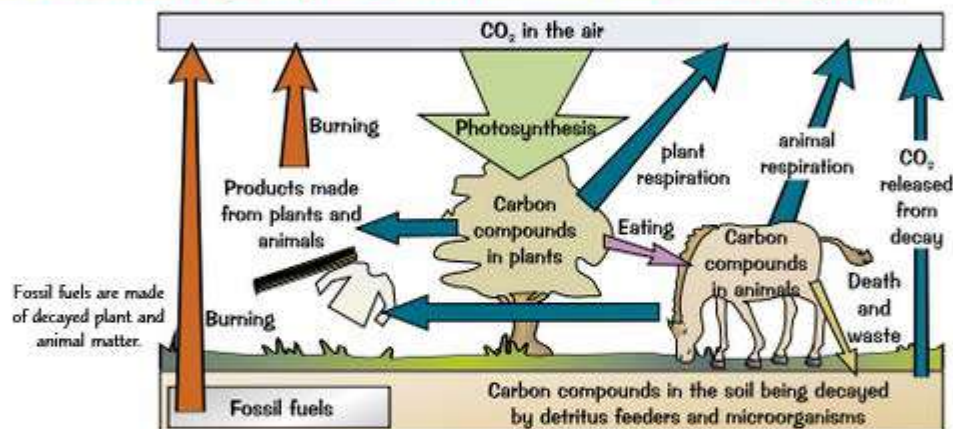
# The Carbon Cycle

**Recycling** may be a buzz word for us but it's old school for nature. All the **nutrients** in our environment are constantly being **recycled** — there's a nice balance between what **goes in** and what **goes out** again.

## Elements are Cycled Back to the Start of the Food Chain by Decay

- 1) **Living things** are made of materials they take from the world around them. E.g. **plants** turn elements like **carbon**, **oxygen**, **hydrogen** and **nitrogen** from the **soil** and the **air** into the **complex compounds** (carbohydrates, proteins and fats) that make up living organisms. These get passed up the **food chain**.
- 2) These materials are **returned** to the environment in **waste products**, or when the organisms **die** and **decay**.
- 3) Materials decay because they're **broken down** (digested) by **microorganisms**. This happens faster in **warm**, **moist**, **aerobic** (oxygen rich) conditions because microorganisms are more active in these conditions.
- 4) **Decay** puts the stuff that plants need to grow (e.g. **mineral ions** — see point 1) **back** into the **soil**.
- 5) In a **stable community**, the materials that are **taken out** of the soil and **used** by plants etc. are **balanced** by those that are put **back in**. There's a constant **cycle** happening.

## The Constant Cycling of Carbon is called the Carbon Cycle



That can look a bit complicated at first, but it's actually pretty simple:

- 1)  $\text{CO}_2$  is removed from the **atmosphere** by green plants and algae during **photosynthesis**. The carbon is used to make **glucose**, which can be turned into **carbohydrates**, **fats** and **proteins** that make up the **bodies** of the plants and algae.
- 2) When the **plants and algae respire**, some carbon is **returned** to the atmosphere as  $\text{CO}_2$ .
- 3) When the plants and algae are **eaten** by **animals**, some carbon becomes part of the **fats** and **proteins** in their bodies. The carbon then moves through the **food chain**.
- 4) When the **animals respire**, some carbon is **returned** to the atmosphere as  $\text{CO}_2$ .
- 5) When plants, algae and animals **die**, other animals (called **detritus feeders**) and **microorganisms** feed on their remains. When these organisms **respire**,  $\text{CO}_2$  is **returned** to the atmosphere.
- 6) **Animals** also produce **waste** that is **broken down** by **detritus feeders** and **microorganisms**.
- 7) The **combustion** (burning) of wood and fossil fuels also **releases  $\text{CO}_2$**  back into the air.
- 8) So the **carbon** (and **energy**) is constantly being **cycled** — from the **air**, through **food chains** (via **plants**, **algae** and **animals**, and **detritus feeders** and **microorganisms**) and eventually back out into the **air** again.

The **energy** that green plants and algae get from photosynthesis is **transferred up** the food chain.

## What goes around comes around...

Carbon is very important for living things — it's the basis for all the organic molecules in our bodies.

Q1 What causes materials to decay?

[1 mark]

Q2 Describe how carbon is removed from the atmosphere in the carbon cycle.

[1 mark]



# Biodiversity and Waste Management

Unfortunately, human activity can **negatively affect** the **planet** and its **variety of life**. Read on for bad news...

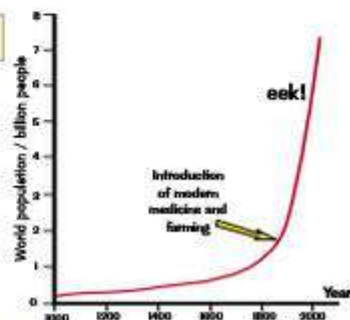
## Earth's Biodiversity is Important

**Biodiversity is the variety of different species of organisms on Earth, or within an ecosystem.**

- 1) **High** biodiversity is important. It makes sure that **ecosystems** (see p.83) are **stable** because different species depend on each other for things like **shelter** and **food**. Different species can also help to maintain the right **physical environment** for each other (e.g. the acidity of the soil).
- 2) For the human species to **survive**, it's important that a good level of biodiversity is maintained.
- 3) Lots of human actions, including **waste production** (see below) and **deforestation** (see p.93), as well as **global warming** (see next page) are reducing biodiversity. However, it's only **recently** that we've started **taking measures** to **stop** this from continuing.

## There are Over Seven Billion People in the World...

- 1) The **population** of the world is currently **rising** very quickly, and it's not slowing down — look at the graph...
- 2) This is mostly due to modern **medicine** and **farming** methods, which have **reduced** the number of **people dying** from **disease** and **hunger**.
- 3) This is great for all of us **humans**, but it means we're having a **bigger effect** on the **environment** we live in.



## ...With Increasing Demands on the Environment

When the **Earth's population** was much smaller, the effects of **human activity** were usually **small** and **local**. Nowadays though, our actions can have a far more **widespread** effect.

- 1) Our increasing **population** puts pressure on the **environment**, as we take the resources we need to **survive**.
- 2) But people around the world are also demanding a higher **standard of living** (and so demand luxuries to make life more comfortable — cars, computers, etc.). So we use more **raw materials** (e.g. oil to make plastics), but we also use more **energy** for the manufacturing processes. This all means we're taking more and more **resources** from the environment more and more **quickly**.
- 3) Unfortunately, many raw materials are being used up quicker than they're being replaced. So if we carry on like we are, one day we're going to **run out**.

## We're Also Producing More Waste

As we make more and more things we produce more and more **waste**, including **waste chemicals**. And unless this waste is properly handled, more **harmful pollution** will be caused. Pollution affects **water**, **land** and **air** and **kills** plants and animals, **reducing biodiversity**.

**Water**

**Sewage** and **toxic chemicals** from industry can pollute lakes, rivers and oceans, affecting the plants and animals that rely on them for survival (including humans). And the **chemicals** used on land (e.g. fertilisers, pesticides and herbicides) can be washed into water.

**Land**

We use **toxic chemicals** for farming (e.g. pesticides and herbicides). We also bury **nuclear waste** underground, and we dump a lot of **household waste** in landfill sites.

**Air**

**Smoke** and **acidic gases** released into the atmosphere can pollute the air, e.g. **sulfur dioxide** can cause **acid rain**.

## More people, more mess, less space, fewer resources...

Biodiversity's a useful thing, but the increasing rate of species extinction means that it's being reduced every day.

Q1 What is meant by the term 'biodiversity'?

[1 mark]

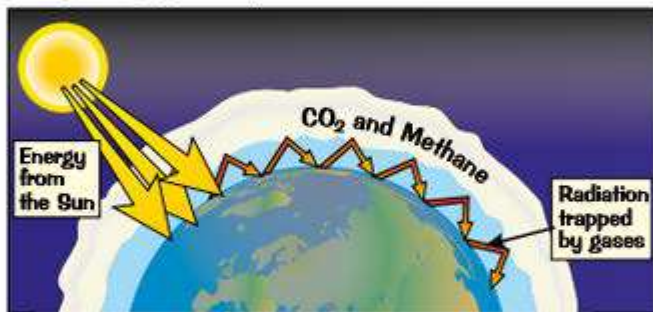
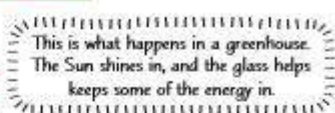


# Global Warming

The Earth is getting **warmer**. Climate scientists are now trying to work out what the **effects** of global warming might be — sadly, it's not as simple as everyone having nicer summers.

## Carbon Dioxide and Methane Trap Energy from the Sun

- 1) The **temperature** of the Earth is a **balance** between the energy it gets from the Sun and the energy it radiates back out into space.
- 2) Gases in the **atmosphere** naturally act like an **insulating layer**. They absorb most of the energy that would normally be radiated out into space, and re-radiate it in all directions (including back towards the Earth). This increases the **temperature** of the planet.
- 3) If this didn't happen, then at night there'd be nothing to keep any energy **in**, and we'd quickly get **very cold** indeed. But recently we've started to worry that this effect is getting a bit out of hand...
- 4) There are several different gases in the atmosphere which help keep the **energy in**. They're called "**greenhouse gases**", and the **main ones** whose levels we worry about are **carbon dioxide** (CO<sub>2</sub>) and **methane** — because the levels of these two gases are rising quite sharply.
- 5) The Earth is gradually heating up because of the increasing levels of greenhouse gases — this is **global warming**. Global warming is a type of **climate change** and causes other types of climate change, e.g. changing rainfall patterns.



## The Consequences of Global Warming Could be Pretty Serious

There are several reasons to be **worried** about global warming. Here are a few:

- 1) Higher temperatures cause **seawater** to **expand** and **ice** to **melt**, causing the sea level to **rise**. It has **risen** a little bit over the last 100 years. This is beginning to **increase** the frequency of **flooding** in some areas. If sea level keeps rising, it'll be **bad news** for people and animals living in **low-lying** places, and could result in the loss of **habitats** (where organisms live).
- 2) The **distribution** of many **wild animal** and **plant species** is changing as **temperatures increase** and the amount of **rainfall changes** in different areas. Some species are becoming **more** widely distributed, e.g. species that need **warmer temperatures** are spreading **further** as the conditions they **thrive** in exist over a **wider** area. Other species are becoming **less** widely distributed, e.g. species that need **cooler temperatures** have **smaller** ranges as the conditions they **thrive** in exist over a **smaller** area.
- 3) There have been **changes in migration patterns**, e.g. some birds may be migrating **further north**, as more northern areas are getting warmer.
- 4) **Biodiversity** (see p.91) could be **reduced** if some species are **unable to survive** a change in the climate, so become **extinct**.



## The greenhouse effect — when you start growing into a tomato...

Global warming is rarely out of the news. Most scientists accept that it's happening and that human activity has caused most of the recent warming. However, they don't know exactly what the effects will be.

Q1 Explain how global warming could lead to the loss of low-lying habitats.

[3 marks]



# Deforestation and Land Use

Trees and peat bogs trap carbon dioxide and lock it up. The problems start when it escapes...

## Humans Use Lots of Land for Lots of Purposes

- 1) We use land for things like building, quarrying, farming and dumping waste.
- 2) This means that there's less land available for other organisms.
- 3) Sometimes, the way we use land has a bad effect on the environment — for example, if it requires deforestation or the destruction of habitats like peat bogs and other areas of peat.

## Deforestation Means Chopping Down Trees

Deforestation is the cutting down of forests. This causes big problems when it's done on a large-scale, such as cutting down rainforests in tropical areas. It's done for various reasons, including:

- To clear land for farming (e.g. cattle or rice crops) to provide more food.
- To grow crops from which biofuels based on ethanol can be produced.



## Deforestation Can Cause Many Problems

### LESS CARBON DIOXIDE TAKEN IN

- 1) Cutting down loads of trees means that the amount of carbon dioxide removed from the atmosphere during photosynthesis is reduced.
- 2) Trees 'lock up' some of the carbon that they absorb during photosynthesis in their wood, which can remove it from the atmosphere for hundreds of years. Removing trees means that less is locked up.

More CO<sub>2</sub> in the atmosphere causes global warming (see previous page), which leads to climate change.

### MORE CARBON DIOXIDE IN THE ATMOSPHERE

- 1) Carbon dioxide is released when trees are burnt to clear land. (Carbon in wood doesn't contribute to atmospheric pollution until it's released by burning.)
- 2) Microorganisms feeding on bits of dead wood release carbon dioxide as a waste product of respiration.

### LESS BIODIVERSITY

- 1) Biodiversity (p.91) is the variety of different species — the more species, the greater the biodiversity.
- 2) Habitats like forests can contain a huge number of different species of plants and animals, so when they are destroyed there is a danger of many species becoming extinct — biodiversity is reduced.

## Destroying Peat Bogs Adds More CO<sub>2</sub> to the Atmosphere

- 1) Bogs are areas of land that are acidic and waterlogged. Plants that live in bogs don't fully decay when they die, because there's not enough oxygen. The partly-rotted plants gradually build up to form peat.
- 2) So the carbon in the plants is stored in the peat instead of being released into the atmosphere.
- 3) However, peat bogs are often drained so that the area can be used as farmland, or the peat is cut up and dried to use as fuel. It's also sold to gardeners as compost. Peat is being used faster than it forms.
- 4) When peat is drained, it comes into more contact with air and some microorganisms start to decompose it. When these microorganisms respire, they use oxygen and release carbon dioxide, contributing to global warming (see the previous page).
- 5) Carbon dioxide is also released when peat is burned as a fuel.
- 6) Destroying the bogs also destroys (or reduces the area of) the habitats of some of the animals, plants and microorganisms that live there, so reduces biodiversity.

## Pete Boggs Demolition Ltd — the name in habitat destruction...

So removing trees and peat results in more atmospheric CO<sub>2</sub>, which contributes to global warming. Bad times.

Q1 Suggest why deforestation can result in a higher CO<sub>2</sub> concentration in the atmosphere.

[3 marks]



# Maintaining Ecosystems and Biodiversity

It's really important that biodiversity is maintained, but other factors also have to be taken into account.

## Programmes Can be Set Up to Protect Ecosystems and Biodiversity

It's important that biodiversity is maintained at a high enough level to make sure that ecosystems are stable (see page 83). In some areas, programmes have been set up by concerned citizens and scientists to minimise damage by human activities (see p.91) to ecosystems and biodiversity. Here are a few examples:

- 1) Breeding programmes have been set up to help prevent endangered species from becoming extinct. These are where animals are bred in captivity to make sure the species survives if it dies out in the wild. Individuals can sometimes be released into the wild to boost or re-establish a population.
- 2) Programmes to protect and regenerate rare habitats like mangroves, heathland and coral reefs have been started. Protecting these habitats helps to protect the species that live there — preserving the ecosystem and biodiversity in the area.
- 3) There are programmes to reintroduce hedgerows and field margins around fields on farms where only a single type of crop is grown. Field margins are areas of land around the edges of fields where wild flowers and grasses are left to grow. Hedgerows and field margins provide a habitat for a wider variety of organisms than could survive in a single crop habitat.
- 4) Some governments have introduced regulations and programmes to reduce the level of deforestation taking place and the amount of carbon dioxide being released into the atmosphere by businesses. This could reduce the increase of global warming (see page 92).
- 5) People are encouraged to recycle to reduce the amount of waste that gets dumped in landfill sites. This could reduce the amount of land taken over for landfill, leaving ecosystems in place.

## Conflicting Pressures Can Affect How Biodiversity is Maintained

Sadly for noble biodiversity warriors, maintaining biodiversity isn't as simple as you would hope. There are lots of conflicting pressures that have to be taken into account. For example:

- 1) Protecting biodiversity costs money. For example, governments sometimes pay farmers a subsidy to reintroduce hedgerows and field margins to their land. It can also cost money to keep a watch on whether the programmes and regulations designed to maintain biodiversity are being followed. There can be conflict between protecting biodiversity and saving money — money may be prioritised for other things.
- 2) Protecting biodiversity may come at a cost to local people's livelihood. For example, reducing the amount of deforestation is great for biodiversity, but the people who were previously employed in the tree-felling industry could be left unemployed. This could affect the local economy if people move away with their family to find work.
- 3) There can be conflict between protecting biodiversity and protecting our food security. Sometimes certain organisms are seen as pests by farmers (e.g. locusts and foxes) and are killed to protect crops and livestock so that more food can be produced. As a result, however, the food chain and biodiversity can be affected.
- 4) Development is important, but it can affect the environment. Many people want to protect biodiversity in the face of development, but sometimes land is in such high demand that previously untouched land with high biodiversity has to be used for development, e.g. for housing developments on the edge of towns, or for new agricultural land in developing countries.

## Revision or sleep — now that's a conflicting pressure...

Like many situations in ecology, maintaining biodiversity isn't black and white. There are lots of factors to take into account before decisions on the best way to go forward can be made.

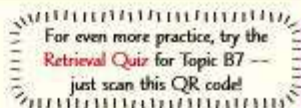
- |    |   |           |
|----|---|-----------|
| Q1 | Give an example of how biodiversity can be increased in areas that farm single crops. | [2 marks] |
| Q2 | How could wild populations of endangered species be preserved by breeding programmes? | [2 marks] |



# Revision Questions for Topic B7

That's **Topic B7** done with. I bet you're right in the mood for a long list of revision question now. You're in luck.

- Try these questions and **tick off each one** when you **get it right**.
- When you're **completely happy** with a sub-topic, tick it off.



## Competition, Abiotic and Biotic Factors, and Adaptations (p.83-85) ☒

- 1) Define 'habitat'.
- 2) What things do animals compete for in an ecosystem?
- 3) What are biotic and abiotic factors?
- 4) What are functional adaptations?

☐  
☐  
☐  
☐

## Food Chains (p.86) ☐

- 5) What do food chains always start with?
- 6) Explain what happens to the population size of a predator if its prey becomes more common in an ecosystem.

☐  
☐

## Quadrats and Transects (p.87-88) ☐

- 7) Explain how a quadrat can be used to investigate the distribution of clover plants in two areas.
- 8) Suggest why you might use a transect when investigating the distribution of organisms.

☐  
☐

## The Water and Carbon Cycles (p.89-90) ☐

- 9) When water vapour cools and condenses in the atmosphere, what does it change into?
- 10) Explain how microorganisms return carbon to the atmosphere.

☐  
☐

## Human Impacts on the Planet (p.91-94) ☐

- 11) Suggest why it's important to have high biodiversity in an ecosystem.
- 12) Name two gases linked to global warming.
- 13) Give an example of how global warming could reduce biodiversity.
- 14) Why might humans carry out deforestation?
- 15) Explain why the destruction of peat bogs adds more carbon dioxide to the atmosphere.
- 16) How can recycling programmes help to protect ecosystems?

☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐

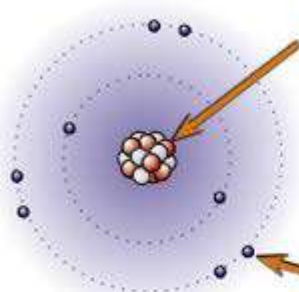


# Atoms

All substances are made of **atoms**. They're really **tiny** — too small to see, even with your microscope. Atoms are so tiny that a **50p piece** contains about 77 400 000 000 000 000 000 000 of them. Quite a lot then...

## Atoms Contain Protons, Neutrons and Electrons

Atoms have a radius of about **0.1 nanometres** (that's  $1 \times 10^{-10}$  m). There are a few different (and equally useful) modern models of the atom — but chemists tend to like the model below best.



### The Nucleus

- 1) It's in the **middle** of the atom.
- 2) It contains **protons** and **neutrons**.
- 3) The nucleus has a **radius** of around  $1 \times 10^{-14}$  m (that's around 1/10 000 of the radius of an atom)
- 4) It has a **positive charge** because of the protons.
- 5) Almost the **whole** mass of the atom is **concentrated** in the nucleus.

A nanometre (nm) is one billionth of a metre. Shown in standard form, that's  $1 \times 10^{-9}$  m. Standard form is used for showing really large or really small numbers.

Protons are heavy and positively charged.  
Neutrons are heavy and neutral.  
Electrons are tiny and negatively charged.

Particle	Relative Mass	Charge
Proton	1	+1
Neutron	1	0
Electron	Very small	-1

(Electron mass is often taken as **zero**.)

### The Electrons

- 1) Move **around** the nucleus in electron **shells**.
- 2) They're **negatively charged** and **tiny**, but they cover **a lot of space**.
- 3) The **volume** of their orbits determines the size of the atom.
- 4) Electrons have virtually **no** mass.

## Number of Protons Equals Number of Electrons

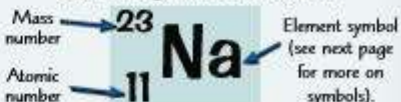
- 1) Atoms are **neutral** — they have **no charge** overall (unlike ions).
- 2) This is because they have the **same number** of **protons** as **electrons**.
- 3) The **charge** on the electrons is the **same size** as the charge on the **protons**, but **opposite** — so the charges **cancel out**.
- 4) In an ion, the number of protons **doesn't equal** the number of **electrons**. This means it has an **overall charge**. For example, an ion with a **2- charge**, has **two more** electrons than protons.

An ion is an atom or group of atoms that has lost or gained electrons.

## Atomic Number and Mass Number Describe an Atom

- 1) The **nuclear symbol** of an atom tells you its **atomic (proton) number** and **mass number**.
- 2) The **atomic number** tells you how many **protons** there are.
- 3) The **mass number** tells you the **total number** of **protons and neutrons** in the atom.
- 4) To get the number of **neutrons**, just subtract the **atomic number** from the **mass number**.

Nuclear symbol for sodium.



## Let's be positive — unless you're an electron of course...

Atoms may be tiny, and the things inside them even smaller, but this stuff is super important. If you get to grips with the basic facts then you'll have a better chance understanding the rest of chemistry. Crack on.

- Q1 An atom of gallium has an atomic number of 31 and a mass number of 70.  
Give the number of electrons, protons and neutrons in the atom.

[3 marks]



Q1 Video Solution



# Elements

An **element** is a substance made up of atoms that all have the **same** number of **protons** in their nucleus.

## Elements Consist of Atoms With the Same Atomic Number

- 1) Atoms can have different numbers of protons, neutrons and electrons.  
It's the number of **protons** in the nucleus that decides what **type** of atom it is.
- 2) For example, an atom with **one proton** in its nucleus is **hydrogen** and an atom with **two protons** is **helium**.
- 3) If a substance only contains atoms with the **same number** of **protons** it's called an **element**.  
There are about **100 different elements**.
- 4) So **all the atoms** of a particular **element** (e.g. nitrogen) have the **same number** of protons and **different elements** have atoms with **different numbers** of protons.

## Atoms Can be Represented by Symbols

Atoms of each element can be represented by a **one or two letter symbol** — it's a type of **shorthand** that saves you the bother of having to write the full name of the element.

Some make **perfect sense**, e.g. C = carbon O = oxygen Mg = magnesium

Others less so, e.g. Na = sodium Fe = iron Pb = lead

You'll see these symbols on the periodic table (see page 106).

Most of these odd symbols actually come from the Latin names of the elements.

## Isotopes are the Same Except for Extra Neutrons

- 1) **Isotopes** are different forms of the same element, which have the **same number** of **protons** but a **different number** of **neutrons**.
- 2) So isotopes have the **same atomic number** but **different mass numbers**.
- 3) A very popular example of a pair of isotopes are **carbon-12** and **carbon-13**.

The number of neutrons is just the mass number minus the atomic number.

Carbon-12

$^{12}_6\text{C}$  6 Protons  
6 Electrons  
6 Neutrons



Carbon-13

$^{13}_6\text{C}$  6 Protons  
6 Electrons  
7 Neutrons



- 4) Because many **elements** can exist as a number of different isotopes, **relative atomic mass** ( $A_r$ ) is used instead of mass number when referring to the element as a whole. This is an **average** mass taking into account the **different masses** and **abundances** (amounts) of all the isotopes that make up the element.
- 5) You can use this **formula** to work out the **relative atomic mass** of an element:

$$\text{relative atomic mass } (A_r) = \frac{\text{sum of (isotope abundance} \times \text{isotope mass number)}}{\text{sum of abundances of all the isotopes}}$$

### EXAMPLE

Copper has two stable isotopes. Cu-63 has an abundance of 69.2% and Cu-65 has an abundance of 30.8%. Calculate the relative atomic mass of copper to 1 decimal place.

$$\text{Relative atomic mass} = \frac{(69.2 \times 63) + (30.8 \times 65)}{69.2 + 30.8} = \frac{4359.6 + 2002}{100} = \frac{6361.6}{100} = 63.616 = 63.6$$

## It's elemental my dear Watson...

Atoms, elements and isotopes — make sure you know what they are and the differences between them.

- Q1 A substance consists of atoms which all have the same number of protons and electrons but different numbers of neutrons. Explain why this substance is an element. [1 mark]
- Q2 Silicon, Si, has three stable isotopes. Si-28 has an abundance of 92.2%, Si-29 has an abundance of 4.7% and Si-30 has an abundance of 3.1%. Calculate silicon's relative atomic mass to 1 decimal place. [2 marks]



Q2 Video Solution



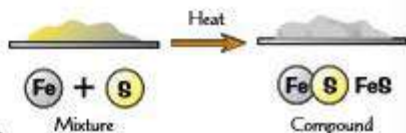
# Compounds

It would be great if we only had to deal with elements. But unluckily for you, elements can mix and match to make lots of new substances called **compounds**. And this makes things a little bit more complicated...

## Atoms Join Together to Make Compounds

- When **elements react**, atoms **combine** with other atoms to form **compounds**.
- Compounds are substances formed from **two or more** elements, the atoms of each are in **fixed proportions** throughout the compound and they're held together by **chemical bonds**.
- Making bonds** involves atoms giving away, taking or sharing **electrons**. Only the **electrons** are involved — the nuclei of the atoms aren't affected at all when a bond is made.
- It's **usually difficult** to **separate** the original elements of a compound out again — a chemical reaction is needed to do this.
- A compound which is formed from a **metal** and a **non-metal** consists of **ions**. The **metal** atoms **lose** electrons to form **positive ions** and the **non-metal** atoms **gain** electrons to form **negative ions**. The **opposite charges** (positive and negative) of the ions mean that they're strongly **attracted** to each other. This is called **ionic bonding**. Examples of compounds which are bonded ionically include sodium chloride, magnesium oxide and calcium oxide.
- A compound formed from **non-metals** consists of **molecules**. Each atom **shares** an **electron** with another atom — this is called **covalent bonding**. Examples of compounds that are bonded covalently include hydrogen chloride gas, carbon monoxide, and water.
- The **properties** of a compound are usually **totally different** from the properties of the **original elements**. For example, if iron (a lustrous magnetic metal) and sulfur (a nice yellow powder) react, the compound formed (**iron sulfide**) is a **dull grey solid lump**, and doesn't behave **anything like** either iron or sulfur.

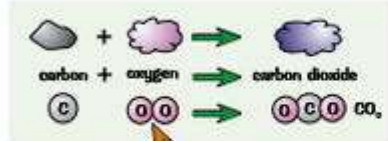
During a chemical reaction, at least one new substance is made. You can usually measure a change in energy, such as a temperature change, as well.



## A Formula Shows What Atoms are in a Compound

Just as elements can be represented by **symbols**, compounds can be represented by **formulas**. The formulas are made up of elemental symbols in the **same proportions** that the elements can be found in the compound.

- For example, carbon dioxide,  $\text{CO}_2$ , is a **compound** formed from a **chemical reaction** between carbon and oxygen. It contains **1 carbon atom** and **2 oxygen atoms**.
- Here's another example: the formula of **sulfuric acid** is  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ . So, each molecule contains **2 hydrogen atoms**, **1 sulfur atom** and **4 oxygen atoms**.
- There might be **brackets** in a formula, e.g. calcium hydroxide is  $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$ . The little number outside the bracket applies to **everything** inside the brackets. So in  $\text{Ca}(\text{OH})_2$  there's **1 calcium atom**, **2 oxygen atoms** and **2 hydrogen atoms**.



Elemental oxygen goes around in pairs of atoms (so it's  $\text{O}_2$ ).

Here are some examples of formulas which might come in handy:

- |                                   |                                     |  |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1) Carbon dioxide — $\text{CO}_2$ | 4) Sodium chloride — $\text{NaCl}$  | 7) Calcium chloride — $\text{CaCl}_2$          |
| 2) Ammonia — $\text{NH}_3$        | 5) Carbon monoxide — $\text{CO}$    | 8) Sodium carbonate — $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ |
| 3) Water — $\text{H}_2\text{O}$   | 6) Hydrochloric acid — $\text{HCl}$ | 9) Sulfuric acid — $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$     |

## If you don't revise, it will only compound your problems...

You know when you were little and taught to share things? Turns out atoms have been doing this since the start of the universe. Maybe we could all learn a thing or two from those little guys.

Q1 How many atoms are in one particle of  $\text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3$ ?

[1 mark]

Q2 A compound has the formula  $\text{Al}_2(\text{SO}_4)_3$ . Name the elements and state how many atoms of each element are represented in its formula.

[1 mark]



Q2 Video Solution



# Chemical Equations

**Chemical equations** are fundamental to chemistry. Pretty much like tomato ketchup is to a bacon butty. Mmm... bacon butties... Sorry, I got distracted. Let's do this.

## Chemical Changes are Shown Using Chemical Equations

One way to show a chemical reaction is to write a **word equation**. It's not as **quick** as using chemical symbols and you can't tell straight away **what's happened** to each of the **atoms**, but it's **dead easy**.

Here's an example — you're told that **methane** burns in **oxygen** giving **carbon dioxide** and water:

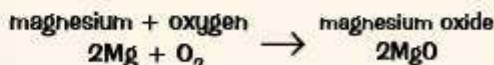
The molecules on the **left-hand side** of the equation are called the **reactants** (because they react with each other).



The molecules on the **right-hand side** are called the **products** (because they've been produced from the reactants).

## Symbol Equations Show the Atoms on Both Sides

Chemical **changes** can be shown in a kind of **shorthand** using symbol equations. Symbol equations just show the **symbols or formulas** of the **reactants** and **products**...



You'll have spotted that there's a '2' in front of the Mg and the MgO. The reason for this is explained below...

## Symbol Equations Need to be Balanced

- 1) There must always be the **same** number of atoms on **both sides** — they can't just **disappear**.
- 2) You **balance** the equation by putting numbers **in front** of the formulas where needed. Take this equation for reacting sulfuric acid with sodium hydroxide:



- 3) The **formulas** are all correct but the numbers of some atoms **don't match up** on both sides.
- 4) You **can't change formulas** like  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  to  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_6$ . You can only put numbers **in front of them**.

The more you **practise**, the **quicker** you get, but all you do is this:

- 1) Find an element that **doesn't balance** and **pencil in a number** to try and sort it out.
- 2) **See where it gets you**. It may create **another imbalance**, but if so, pencil in **another number** and see where that gets you.
- 3) Carry on chasing **unbalanced** elements and it'll **sort itself out** pretty quickly.

### EXAMPLE

In the equation above you'll notice we're short of **H atoms** on the RHS (Right-Hand Side).

- 1) The only thing you can do about that is make it **2H<sub>2</sub>O** instead of just H<sub>2</sub>O:



- 2) But that now gives **too many** H atoms and O atoms on the RHS, so to balance that up you could try putting **2NaOH** on the LHS (Left-Hand Side):



- 3) And suddenly there it is! **Everything balances**. And you'll notice the Na just sorted itself out.



## Revision is all about getting the balance right...

Balancing equations is all about practice. Once you have a few goes you'll see it's much less scary than it seemed before you took on, challenged and defeated this page. Go grab some chemistry glory.

Q1 Balance the equation:  $\text{Fe} + \text{Cl}_2 \rightarrow \text{FeCl}_3$

[1 mark]

Q2 Hydrogen and oxygen molecules are formed in a reaction where water splits apart.

For this reaction: a) State the word equation. b) Give a balanced symbol equation. [3 marks]



Q2 Video Solution



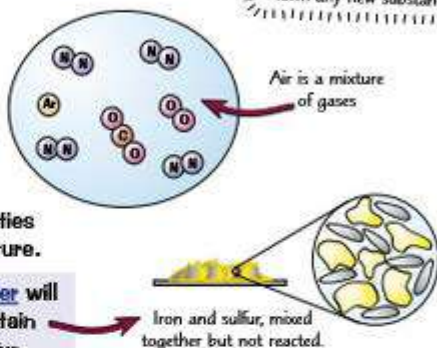
# Mixtures and Chromatography

Mixtures in **chemistry** are just like mixtures in baking, lots of **separate** things all mixed together. But most of the time they're considerably less delicious. And you probably shouldn't eat them. Or put them in an oven.

## Mixtures are Easily Separated — Not Like Compounds

- 1) Unlike in a compound, there's **no chemical bond** between the different parts of a mixture.
- 2) The parts of a mixture can be either **elements** or **compounds**, and they can be separated out by **physical methods** such as filtration (p. 101), crystallisation (p.101), simple distillation (p.102), fractional distillation (p.102) and chromatography (see below).
- 3) **Air** is a **mixture** of gases, mainly nitrogen, oxygen, carbon dioxide and argon. The gases can all be **separated out** fairly easily.
- 4) **Crude oil** is a **mixture** of different length hydrocarbon molecules.
- 5) The **properties** of a mixture are just a **mixture** of the properties of the **separate parts** — the chemical properties of a substance **aren't** affected by it being part of a mixture.

A physical method is one that doesn't involve a chemical reaction, so doesn't form any new substances.



For example, a **mixture** of **iron powder** and **sulfur powder** will show the properties of **both iron and sulfur**. It will contain grey magnetic bits of iron and bright yellow bits of sulfur.

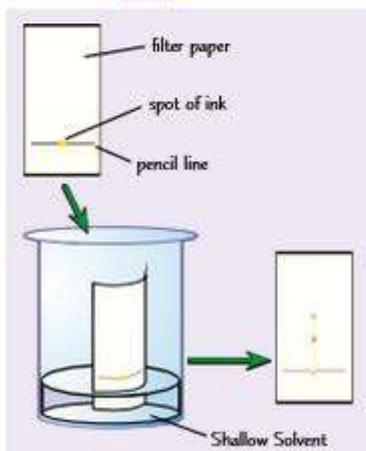
## You Need to Know How to Do Paper Chromatography

**PRACTICAL**

One method of separating substances in a mixture is through **chromatography**. This technique can be used to separate different **dyes** in an **ink**. Here's how you can do it:

- 1) Draw a **line** near the bottom of a sheet of **filter paper**. (Use a **pencil** to do this — pencil marks are **insoluble** and won't dissolve in the solvent.)
- 2) Add a **spot** of the ink to the line and place the sheet in a beaker of **solvent**, e.g. water.
- 3) The **solvent** used depends on what's being tested. Some compounds **dissolve** well in **water**, but sometimes other solvents, like ethanol, are needed.
- 4) Make sure the ink isn't touching the solvent — you don't want it to **dissolve** into it.
- 5) Place a **lid** on top of the container to stop the solvent **evaporating**.
- 6) The solvent **seeps** up the paper, carrying the ink with it.
- 7) Each different **dye** in the ink will move up the paper at a **different rate** so the dyes will **separate out**. Each dye will form a **spot** in a different place — 1 spot per dye in the ink.
- 8) If any of the dyes in the ink are **insoluble** (won't dissolve) in the solvent you've used, they'll stay on the **baseline**.
- 9) When the **solvent** has nearly reached the **top** of the paper, take the paper out of the beaker and leave it to **dry**.
- 10) The end result is a pattern of spots called a **chromatogram**.

The point the solvent has reached as it moves up the paper is the solvent front.



## Chemistry and fun are a mixture — easily separated...

Chromatography is actually mighty useful in real life. It's used to test athletes' urine samples for performance enhancing drugs, and also to test unknown substances at crime scenes. Eek...

Q1 Explain why you shouldn't use a pen to draw a line on the filter paper for paper chromatography. [1 mark]



# More Separation Techniques

## PRACTICAL

Filtration and crystallisation are methods of separating mixtures. Chemists use these techniques all the time to separate solids from liquids, so it's worth making sure you know how to do them.

### Filtration Separates Insoluble Solids from Liquids

- 1) Filtration can be used if your product is an insoluble solid that needs to be separated from a liquid reaction mixture.
- 2) It can be used in purification as well. For example, solid impurities in the reaction mixture can be separated out using filtration.

~ ~ ~ ~ ~ Insoluble means the solid can't be dissolved in the liquid. ~ ~ ~ ~ ~



Filter paper folded into a cone shape — the solid is left in the filter paper.

### Two Ways to Separate Soluble Solids from Solutions

If a solid can be dissolved it's described as being soluble. There are two methods you can use to separate a soluble salt from a solution — evaporation and crystallisation.

#### Evaporation

- 1) Pour the solution into an evaporating dish.
- 2) Slowly heat the solution. The solvent will evaporate and the solution will get more concentrated. Eventually, crystals will start to form.
- 3) Keep heating the evaporating dish until all you have left are dry crystals.

evaporating dish



You don't have to use a Bunsen burner, you could use a water bath, or an electric heater.

Evaporation is a really quick way of separating a soluble salt from a solution, but you can only use it if the salt doesn't decompose (break down) when it's heated. Otherwise, you'll have to use crystallisation.

#### Crystallisation

- 1) Pour the solution into an evaporating dish and gently heat the solution. Some of the solvent will evaporate and the solution will get more concentrated.
- 2) Once some of the solvent has evaporated, or when you see crystals start to form (the point of crystallisation), remove the dish from the heat and leave the solution to cool.
- 3) The salt should start to form crystals as it becomes insoluble in the cold, highly concentrated solution.
- 4) Filter the crystals out of the solution, and leave them in a warm place to dry. You could also use a drying oven or a desiccator.



Salt crystallising out of solution.

### Filtration and Crystallisation can be Used to Separate Rock Salt

- 1) Rock salt is simply a mixture of salt and sand (they spread it on the roads in winter).
- 2) Salt and sand are both compounds — but salt dissolves in water and sand doesn't. This vital difference in their physical properties gives a great way to separate them. Here's what to do...
  - 1) Grind the mixture to make sure the salt crystals are small, so will dissolve easily. You can heat the mixture to help dissolve the salt.
  - 2) Put the mixture in water and stir. The salt will dissolve, but the sand won't.
  - 3) Filter the mixture. The grains of sand won't fit through the tiny holes in the filter paper, so they collect on the paper instead. The salt passes through the filter paper as it's part of the solution.
  - 4) Evaporate the water from the salt so that it forms dry crystals. You could also use crystallisation here if you wanted to make nice, big crystals.

### Revise mixtures — just filter out the important bits...

Two out of three pages on separating mixtures done, phew... But before you dash on to the next page (I know, it's just so exciting), make sure you know this page to a T. Talking about Tea, I need a cuppa...

- Q1 A student needs to produce pure crystals of copper sulfate from an aqueous solution of copper sulfate. Describe how the student could use crystallisation for this process.

[4 marks]

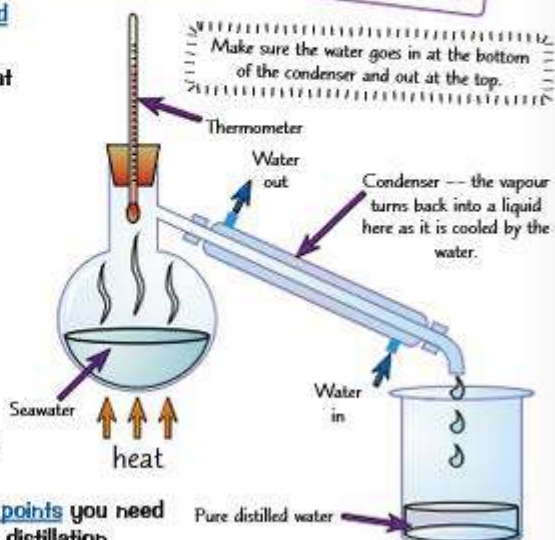


# Distillation

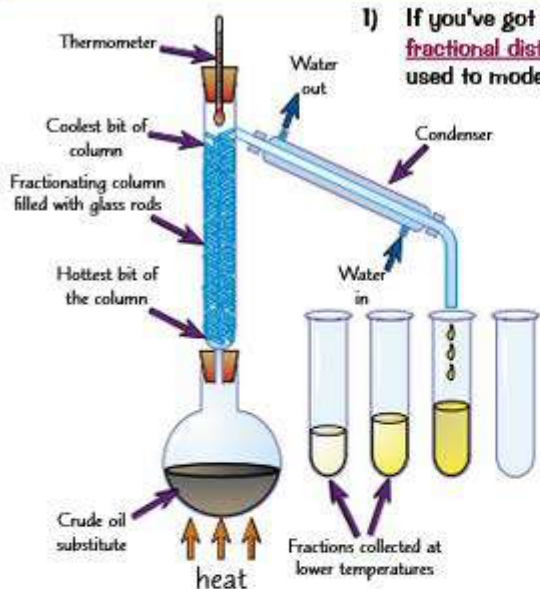
Distillation is used to separate mixtures which contain **liquids**. There are two types that you should know about — **simple** and **fractional**. Hopefully, this page will 'distil' everything you need to know... ho ho.

## Simple Distillation is Used to Separate Out Solutions

- 1) **Simple distillation** is used for separating out a **liquid** from a **solution**.
- 2) The solution is **heated**. The part of the solution that has the lowest boiling point **evaporates** first.
- 3) The **vapour** is then **cooled, condenses** (turns back into a liquid) and is **collected**.
- 4) The rest of the **solution** is left behind in the flask.
- 5) You can use simple distillation to get **pure water** from **seawater**. The **water** evaporates and is condensed and collected. Eventually you'll end up with just the **salt** left in the flask.
- 6) The **problem** with simple distillation is that you can only use it to separate things with **very different** boiling points — if the temperature goes higher than the boiling point of the substance with the higher boiling point, they will **mix** again.
- 7) If you have a **mixture of liquids** with **similar boiling points** you need another method to separate them — like fractional distillation...



## Fractional Distillation is Used to Separate a Mixture of Liquids



- 1) If you've got a **mixture of liquids** you can separate it using **fractional distillation**. Here is a lab demonstration that can be used to model **fractional distillation of crude oil** at a **refinery**.
- 2) You put your **mixture** in a flask and stick a **fractionating column** on top. Then you heat it.
- 3) The **different liquids** will all have **different boiling points** — so they will evaporate at **different temperatures**.
- 4) The liquid with the **lowest boiling point** evaporates first. When the temperature on the thermometer matches the boiling point of this liquid, it will reach the **top** of the column.
- 5) Liquids with **higher boiling points** might also start to evaporate. But the column is **cooler** towards the **top**. So they will only get part of the way up before **condensing** and running back down towards the flask.
- 6) When the first liquid has been collected, you **raise the temperature** until the **next one** reaches the top.

## Fractionating — sounds a bit too much like maths to me...

You made it to the end of separation techniques. Congratulations. Now all you need to do is learn these techniques. Shouldn't be too tricky. Make sure you scribble all this stuff down — you'd be crazy not to.

Q1 Propan-1-ol, methanol and ethanol have boiling points of 97 °C, 65 °C and 78 °C respectively.

A student uses fractional distillation to separate a mixture of these compounds.

State which liquid will be collected in the second fraction and explain why.

[2 marks]



Q1 Video Solution



# The History of the Atom

You might have thought you were done with the atom after page 96. Unfortunately amigo, you don't get away that easily — there's more you need to learn. Hold on to your hat, you're going on a journey through **time**...

## The Theory of Atomic Structure Has Changed Over Time

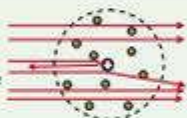
- 1) At the start of the 19th century **John Dalton** described atoms as **solid spheres**, and said that different spheres made up the different **elements**.
- 2) In 1897 **JJ Thomson** concluded from his experiments that atoms **weren't** solid spheres. His measurements of **charge** and **mass** showed that an atom must contain even smaller, negatively charged particles — **electrons**. The 'solid sphere' idea of atomic structure had to be changed. The new theory was known as the '**plum pudding model**'.
- 3) The plum pudding model showed the atom as a **ball** of **positive charge** with **electrons** stuck in it.



## Rutherford Showed that the Plum Pudding Model Was Wrong

- 1) In 1909 Ernest **Rutherford** and his student Ernest **Marsden** conducted the famous **alpha particle scattering experiments**. They fired positively charged **alpha particles** at an extremely thin sheet of gold.
- 2) From the plum pudding model, they were **expecting** the particles to **pass straight through** the sheet or be **slightly deflected** at most. This was because the positive charge of each atom was thought to be very **spread out** through the 'pudding' of the atom. But, whilst most of the particles **did** go **straight through** the gold sheet, some were deflected **more than expected**, and a small number were **deflected backwards**. So the plum pudding model **couldn't** be right.
- 3) Rutherford came up with an idea to explain this new evidence — the **nuclear model** of the atom. In this, there's a tiny, positively charged **nucleus** at the centre, where most of the **mass** is concentrated. A 'cloud' of negative electrons surrounds this nucleus — so most of the atom is **empty space**. When alpha particles came near the **concentrated, positive charge** of the **nucleus**, they were **deflected**. If they were fired directly at the nucleus, they were deflected **backwards**. Otherwise, they passed through the empty space.

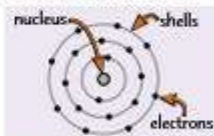
A few particles are deflected backwards by the nucleus.



Most of the particles pass through empty space, but a few are deflected.

## Bohr's Nuclear Model Explains a Lot

- 1) Scientists realised that electrons in a 'cloud' around the nucleus of an atom, as Rutherford described, would be attracted to the nucleus, causing the atom to **collapse**. Niels Bohr's nuclear model of the atom suggested that all the electrons were contained in **shells**.
- 2) Bohr proposed that electrons **orbit** the nucleus in **fixed shells** and aren't anywhere in between. Each shell is a fixed distance from the nucleus.
- 3) Bohr's theory of atomic structure was supported by many **experiments** and it helped to explain lots of other scientists' **observations** at the time.



## Further Experiments Showed the Existence of Protons

- 1) Further experiments by Rutherford and others showed that the nucleus can be **divided** into smaller particles, which each have the **same charge** as a **hydrogen nucleus**. These particles were named **protons**.
- 2) About 20 years after scientists had accepted that atoms have nuclei, **James Chadwick** carried out an experiment which provided evidence for **neutral particles** in the nucleus which are now called **neutrons**. The discovery of neutrons resulted in a model of the atom which was **pretty close** to the **modern day** accepted version, known as the **nuclear model** (see page 96).

## I wanted to be a model — but I ate too much plum pudding...

In science, other people's work is constantly being built upon — increasing our understanding of a topic.

- Q1 Describe the 'plum pudding' model of the atom. [1 mark]
- Q2 Rutherford devised an experiment where alpha particles were fired through gold foil. Most of the particles passed through the foil, but some were deflected by different angles, and some were even deflected backwards. Explain why this disproves the plum pudding model. [2 marks]



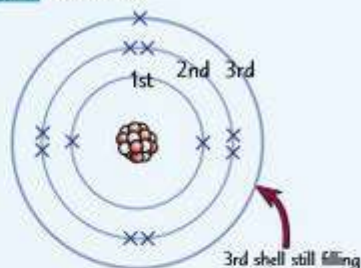
# Electronic Structure

The fact that electrons occupy 'shells' around the nucleus is what causes the whole of chemistry. Remember that, and watch how it applies to each bit of it. It's ace.

## Electron Shell Rules:

- 1) Electrons always occupy **shells** (sometimes called **energy levels**).
- 2) The **lowest** energy levels are **always filled first** — these are the ones closest to the nucleus.
- 3) Only **a certain number** of electrons are allowed in each shell:  
1st shell: 2    2nd shell: 8    3rd shell: 8
- 4) Atoms are much **happier** when they have **full electron shells** — like the **noble gases** in **Group 0**.
- 5) In most atoms, the **outer shell** is **not full** and this makes the atom want to **react** to fill it.

Electron configurations can be shown as **diagrams** like this...



...or as **numbers** like this: **2, 8, 1**

Both of the configurations above are for **sodium**.

## Follow the Rules to Work Out Electronic Structures

You can easily work out the **electronic structures** for the first **20** elements of the periodic table (things get a bit more complicated after that).

### EXAMPLE

What is the electronic structure of nitrogen?

- 1) Nitrogen's atomic number is 7. This means it has 7 protons... so it must have 7 electrons.
- 2) Follow the 'Electron Shell Rules' above. The first shell can only take 2 electrons and the second shell can take a maximum of 8 electrons.

So the electronic structure for nitrogen must be **2, 5**.

### EXAMPLE

What is the electronic structure of magnesium?

- 1) Magnesium's atomic number is 12. This means it has 12 protons... so it must have 12 electrons.
- 2) Follow the 'Electron Shell Rules' above. The first shell can only take 2 electrons and the second shell can take a maximum of 8 electrons, so the third shell must also be partially filled.

So the electronic structure for magnesium must be **2, 8, 2**.

Here are some more examples of electronic structures:

H Hydrogen	He Helium	Li Lithium	C Carbon	Ne Neon	Ca Calcium
1	2	2,1	2,4	2,8	2,8,8,2
Proton no. = 1	Proton no. = 2	Proton no. = 3	Proton no. = 6	Proton no. = 10	Proton no. = 20

## The electronic structure of the fifth element — it's a bit boron...

Electronic structures may seem a bit complicated at first but once you learn the rules, it's a piece of cake. And just like cake, you'll never regret going back for some more. Better get practising.

Q1 Give the electronic structure of aluminium (atomic number = 13).

[1 mark]

Q2 Give the electronic structure of argon (atomic number = 18).

[1 mark]



Q2 Video Solution



## Development of the Periodic Table

We haven't always known as much about chemistry as we do now. No sirree. Early chemists looked to try and understand **patterns** in the elements' properties to get a bit of understanding.

**In the Early 1800s Elements Were Arranged By Atomic Weight**

Until quite recently, there were **two** obvious ways to categorise elements:

- 1) Their physical and chemical properties.
- 2) Their atomic weight.

- Remember, scientists had no idea of atomic structure or of protons, neutrons or electrons, so there was no such thing as atomic number to them. (It was only in the 20th century after protons and electrons were discovered that it was realised the elements were best arranged in order of atomic number.)
- Back then, the only thing they could measure was atomic weight, and so the known elements were arranged in order of atomic weight. When this was done, a periodic pattern was noticed in the properties of the elements. This is where the name 'periodic table' comes from — ta da...
- Early periodic tables were not complete and some elements were placed in the wrong group. This is because elements were placed in the order of atomic weight and did not take into account their properties.

Atomic weight is equivalent to what we now call "relative atomic mass."

### Dmitri Mendeleev Left Gaps and Predicted New Elements

- 1) In 1869, Dmitri Mendeleev overcame some of the problems of early periodic tables by taking 50 known elements and arranging them into his Table of Elements — with various gaps as shown.

## Mendeleev's Table of the Elements

H  
Li Be B C N O F  
Na Mg Al Si P S Cl  
K Ca \* Ti V Cr Mn Fe Co Ni Cu Zn \* \* As Se Br  
Rb Sr Y Zr Nb Mo \* Ru Rh Pd Ag Cd In Sn Sb Te I  
Cs Ba \* \* Ta W \* Os Ir Pt Au Hg Tl Pb Bi

- 2) **Mendeleev** put the elements **mainly** in order of **atomic weight** but did switch that order if the properties meant it should be changed. An example of this can be seen with **Te** and **I** — iodine actually has a **smaller** atomic weight but is placed after tellurium as it has **similar properties** to the elements in that group.

- 3) Gaps were left in the table to make sure that elements with similar properties stayed in the same groups. Some of these gaps indicated the existence of undiscovered elements and allowed Mendeleev to predict what their properties might be. When they were found and they fitted the pattern it helped confirm Mendeleev's ideas. For example, Mendeleev made really good predictions about the chemical and physical properties of an element he called ekasilicon, which we know today as germanium.

The discovery of **isotopes** (see page 97) in the early 20th century confirmed that Mendeleev was correct to **not** place elements in a **strict order** of atomic weight but to also take account of their **properties**. Isotopes of the same element have **different masses** but have the same **chemical properties** so occupy the same position on the periodic table.

**You should come back to this page periodically...**

Ahh more history... This is science at its best, discoveries building upon discoveries — all leading to the point where you have to learn it. Mendelevy would be proud... of himself and you of course.

- Q1 How were elements classified in the early 1800s? [1 mark]
- Q2 Describe two changes that Mendeleev made to early periodic tables. [2 marks]



# The Modern Periodic Table

So, as you've seen it took a while to get to the [periodic table](#) that you will (soon) know and love. I present to you a chemist's best friend...

## The Periodic Table Helps you to See Patterns in Properties

- 1) There are **100ish elements**, which all materials are made of.
- 2) In the periodic table the elements are laid out in order of **increasing atomic (proton) number**. Arranging the elements like this means there are **repeating patterns** in the **properties** of the elements. (The properties are said to occur **periodically**, hence the name **periodic table**.)
- 3) If it wasn't for the periodic table **organising everything**, you'd have a **heck of a job** remembering all those properties. It's **ace**.
- 4) It's a handy tool for working out which elements are **metals** and which are **non-metals**. Metals are found to the **left** and non-metals to the **right**.

relative atomic mass  
atomic number

alkali metals (see page 108)      halogens (see page 109)      noble gases (see page 110)

metals      non-metals  
(pink line separates metals and non-metals)

- 5) Elements with **similar properties** form **columns**.
- 6) These **vertical columns** are called **groups**.
- 7) The **group number** tells you how many **electrons** there are in the **outer shell**. For example, **Group 1** elements all have **one** electron in their outer shell and **Group 7** all have **seven** electrons in their outer shell. The exception to the rule is **group 0**, for example Helium has two electrons in its outer shell. This is useful as the way atoms react depends upon **the number of electrons** in their **outer shell**. So all elements in the same group are likely to react in a similar way.
- 8) If you know the **properties** of **one element**, you can **predict** properties of **other elements** in that group — and in the exam, you might be asked to do this. For example the **Group 1** elements are Li, Na, K, Rb, Cs and Fr. They're all **metals** and they **react in a similar way** (see page 108).
- 9) You can also make predictions about trends in **reactivity**. E.g. in Group 1, the elements react **more vigorously** as you go **down** the group. And in Group 7, **reactivity decreases** as you go down the group.
- 10) The **rows** are called **periods**. Each new period represents another **full shell** of electrons.

## I'm in a chemistry band — I play the symbols...

Because the periodic table is organised into groups and periods, it allows us to see trends in both reactivity and properties. And this means we can make predictions on how reactions will occur. How neat is that?

- Q1 Using a periodic table, state how many electrons beryllium has in its outer shell. [1 mark]
- Q2 Chlorine reacts in a similar way to bromine. Suggest a reason why. [1 mark]
- Q3 Sodium readily forms 1+ ions. Suggest what ions potassium forms and explain why. [1 mark]

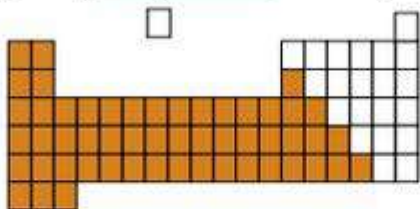


# Metals and Non-Metals

I can almost guarantee you'll touch something **metallic** today, that's how important metals are to modern life.

## Most Elements are Metals

- 1) Metals are elements which can **form positive ions** when they react.
- 2) They're towards the **bottom** and to the **left** of the periodic table.
- 3) **Most elements** in the periodic table are metals.
- 4) **Non-metals** are at the far **right** and **top** of the periodic table.
- 5) Non-metals **don't** generally **form positive ions** when they react.



The orange elements  
are metals

The white elements  
are non-metals

## The Electronic Structure of Atoms Affects How They Will React

- 1) Atoms generally react to form a **full outer shell**. They do this via **losing**, **gaining** or **sharing** electrons.
- 2) Metals to the **left** of the periodic table **don't** have many **electrons to remove** and metals towards the **bottom** of the periodic table have outer electrons which are a **long way** from the nucleus so feel a weaker attraction. **Both** these effects means that **not much energy** is needed to remove the electrons so it's **feasible** for the elements to react to **form positive ions** with a full outer shell.
- 3) For **non-metals**, forming positive ions is much **more difficult**. This is as they are either to the right of the periodic table — where they have **lots of electrons** to remove to get a full outer shell, or towards the top — where the outer electrons are close to the nucleus so feel a **strong attraction**. It's far more feasible for them to either **share** or **gain** electrons to get a full outer shell.

## Metals and Non-Metals Have Different Physical Properties

- 1) All metals have **metallic bonding** which causes them to have **similar** basic physical properties.

- They're **strong** (hard to break), but can be **bent** or **hammered** into different shapes (malleable).
- They're great at **conducting heat** and **electricity**.
- They have high **boiling and melting points**.



- 2) As non-metals **don't** have metallic bonding, they don't tend to exhibit the same properties as metals. They tend to be **dull looking**, **more brittle**, **aren't always solids** at room temperature, **don't** generally **conduct electricity** and often have a **lower density**.

Non-metals form a variety of different structures so have a wide range of chemical properties.

## You can 'rock out' to metal, you can sway gently to non-metal...

Metals and non-metals are like chalk and cheese... Though I hope there's no metal in your cheese.

- |    |   |           |
|----|---|-----------|
| Q1 | Iodine generally reacts by forming negative ions. Is iodine a metal or a non-metal?   | [1 mark]  |
| Q2 | State three properties of metals.   | [3 marks] |
| Q3 | State whether metals generally form positive or negative ions. Explain why they form these ions with reference to their position in the periodic table. | [4 marks] |

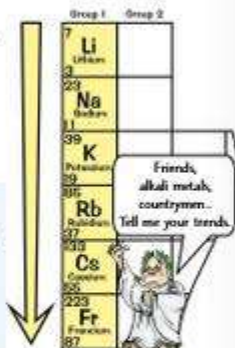


# Group 1 Elements

Group 1 elements are known as the **alkali metals**. As metals go, they're pretty **reactive**.

## The Group 1 Elements are Reactive, Soft Metals

- 1) The alkali metals are lithium, sodium, potassium, rubidium, caesium and francium.
- 2) They all have **one electron** in their outer shell which makes them **very reactive** and gives them **similar properties**.
- 3) The alkali metals are all **soft** and have **low density**.
- 4) The **trends** for the alkali metals as you go **down** Group 1 include:
  - **Increasing reactivity** — the outer electron is **more easily lost** as the attraction between the nucleus and electron decreases, because the electron is **further away** from the nucleus the further down the group you go.
  - **Lower melting** and **boiling** points.
  - **Higher relative atomic mass**.



## Alkali Metals Form Ionic Compounds with Non-Metals

- 1) The Group 1 elements don't need much energy to lose their one outer electron to form a full outer shell, so they readily form **1+ ions**.
- 2) It's so easy for them to lose their outer electron that they only ever react to form **ionic compounds**. These compounds are generally **white solids** that dissolve in water to form **colourless solutions**.

Don't worry, there's more on ionic compounds on page 114.

## Reaction with Water Produces Hydrogen Gas

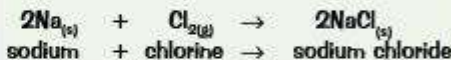
- 1) When Group 1 metals are put in **water**, they react very **vigorously**.
- 2) The **more reactive** (lower down in the group) an alkali metal is, the more violent the reaction.
- 3) Lithium, sodium and potassium **float** and **move** around the surface, **fizzing** furiously.
- 4) They produce **hydrogen**. The amount of **energy** given out when they react increases down the group. For potassium and below in the group, there's enough energy to ignite hydrogen.
- 5) They also form **hydroxides** that **dissolve** in water to give **alkaline** solutions.



The other Group 1 metals react with water in a similar way.

## Reaction with Chlorine Produces a Salt

- 1) Group 1 metals react **vigorously** when heated in **chlorine gas** to form **white salts** called **metal chlorides**.
- 2) As you go down the group, reactivity increases so the reaction with chlorine gets **more vigorous**.



## Group 1 Metals React with Oxygen

The Group 1 metals can react with **oxygen** to form a **metal oxide**. Different types of **oxide** will form depending on the Group 1 metal.

- Lithium reacts to form **lithium oxide** ( $\text{Li}_2\text{O}$ ).
- Sodium reacts to form a mixture of **sodium oxide** ( $\text{Na}_2\text{O}$ ) and **sodium peroxide** ( $\text{Na}_2\text{O}_2$ ).
- Potassium reacts to form a mixture of **potassium peroxide** ( $\text{K}_2\text{O}_2$ ) and **potassium superoxide** ( $\text{KO}_2$ ).

The reactions with oxygen are why Group 1 metals tarnish in the air — the metal reacts with oxygen in the air to form a dull metal oxide layer.

## Back to the drawing board with my lithium swimsuit design...

Reactions of alkali metals need safety precautions, but they fizz in water and might explode. Cool.

Q1 Write a word equation for the reaction between lithium and water.

[1 mark]

Q2 Explain the trend in reactivity as you go down Group 1.

[2 marks]



Q1 Video Solution



# Group 7 Elements

The Group 7 elements are known as the **halogens**. The whole 'trend thing' happens with the halogens as well — that shouldn't come as a surprise.

## The Halogens are All Non-Metals with Coloured Vapours

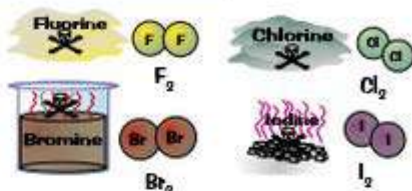
**Fluorine** is a very reactive, poisonous **yellow gas**.

**Chlorine** is a fairly reactive, poisonous **dense green gas**.

**Bromine** is a dense, poisonous, **red-brown volatile liquid**.

**Iodine** is a **dark grey crystalline solid** or a **purple vapour**.

They all exist as molecules which are **pairs of atoms**.



## Learn These Trends:

As you go **DOWN** Group 7, the **halogens**:

- 1) become **LESS REACTIVE** — it's **harder to gain** an extra electron, because the outer shell's further from the nucleus.
- 2) have **HIGHER MELTING AND BOILING POINTS**.
- 3) have **HIGHER RELATIVE ATOMIC MASSES**.

All the Group 7 elements react in **similar ways**. This is because they all have **seven electrons** in their outer shell.

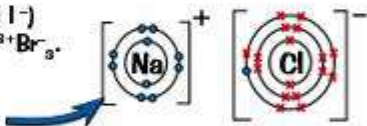
You can use these trends to predict properties of halogens. For example, you know that iodine will have a higher boiling point than chlorine as it's further down the group in the periodic table.

## Halogens can Form Molecular Compounds

Halogen atoms can **share** electrons via covalent bonding (see page 115) with other **non-metals** so as to achieve a **full outer shell**. For example  $\text{HCl}$ ,  $\text{PCl}_5$ ,  $\text{HF}$  and  $\text{CCl}_4$  contain covalent bonds. The compounds that form when halogens react with non-metals all have **simple molecular structures** (see p.116).

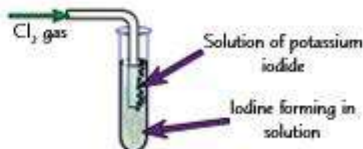
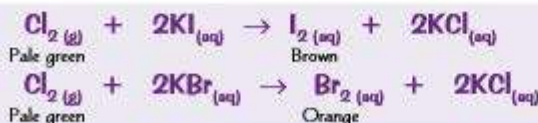
## Halogens Form Ionic Bonds with Metals

- 1) The halogens form  **$\text{I}^-$  ions** called **halides** ( $\text{F}^-$ ,  $\text{Cl}^-$ ,  $\text{Br}^-$  and  $\text{I}^-$ ) when they bond with **metals**, for example  $\text{Na}^+\text{Cl}^-$  or  $\text{Fe}^{3+}\text{Br}_3^-$ .
- 2) The compounds that form have **ionic structures**.
- 3) The diagram shows the bonding in sodium chloride,  $\text{NaCl}$ .



## More Reactive Halogens Will Displace Less Reactive Ones

A **displacement reaction** can occur between a more reactive halogen and the salt of a less reactive one. E.g. **chlorine** can displace **bromine** and **iodine** from an aqueous **solution** of its salt (a **bromide** or **iodide**). **Bromine** will also displace **iodine** because of the **trend** in **reactivity**.



## Halogens — one electron short of a full shell...

Group 7 elements that are higher up displace those that are lower down in displacement reactions. So if you think of displacement reactions like boxing matches, fluorine would be the heavyweight champion.

Q1 Give the balanced symbol equation for the displacement reaction between bromine and sodium iodide.

[1 mark]

Q2 Why do Group 7 elements get less reactive as you go down the group from fluorine to iodine?

[3 marks]





# Group 0 Elements

The Group 0 elements are known as **noble gases** — stuffed full of every honourable virtue. They don't react with very much and you can't even see them — making them, well, a bit dull really.

## Group 0 Elements are All Inert, Colourless Gases

- 1) Group 0 elements are called the **noble gases** and include the elements **helium**, **neon** and **argon** (plus a few others).
- 2) They all have **eight electrons** in their outer energy level, apart from helium which has two, giving them a **full outer-shell**. As their outer shell is energetically stable they don't need to **give up** or **gain** electrons to become more stable. This means they are more or less **inert** — they **don't react** with much at all.
- 3) They exist as **monatomic gases** — single atoms **not** bonded to each other.
- 4) All elements in Group 0 are **colourless gases** at room temperature.
- 5) As the noble gases are inert they're **non-flammable** — they won't set on fire.

Helium only has electrons in the first shell, which only needs 2 to be filled.

## There are Patterns in the Properties of the Noble Gases

- 1) The **boiling points** of the noble gases **increase** as you move **down** the group along with increasing relative atomic mass.

Noble Gas
helium
neon
argon
krypton
xenon
radon

Increasing boiling point

- 2) The increase in boiling point is due to an **increase** in the **number of electrons** in each **atom** leading to **greater intermolecular forces** between them which need to be overcome. There's more on intermolecular forces for small molecules on page 116.



Here's another pattern. You don't have to learn this one...

- 3) In the exam you may be given the boiling point of one noble gas and asked to **estimate** the value for **another one**. So make sure you know the **pattern**.

### EXAMPLE

Neon is a gas at 25 °C. Predict what state helium is at this temperature.

Helium has a lower boiling point than neon as it is further up the group.

So, helium must also be a gas at 25 °C.

### EXAMPLE

Radon and krypton have boiling points of -62 °C and -153 °C respectively. Predict the boiling point of xenon.

Xenon comes in between radon and krypton in the group so you can predict that its boiling point would be halfway between their boiling points:  $(-153) + (-62) = -215$

So, xenon should have a boiling point of about -108 °C.

The actual boiling point of xenon is -108 °C — just as predicted. Neat!



...or this one.

## Arrrgon — the pirate element...

As noble gases don't really react there isn't too much to learn about them. If you understand why they are unreactive and the trend in boiling points as you go down the group you're sorted.

Q1 Does xenon or neon have the higher boiling point?

[1 mark]

Q2 Argon is very unreactive. Using your knowledge of its electronic structure, explain why.

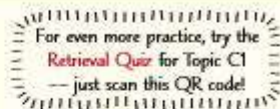
[2 marks]



# Revision Questions for Topic C1

**Topic C1** — finished. But hold on there my friend, don't rush on to Topic C2 just yet. There's one more thing for you to do...

- Try these questions and **tick off each one** when you **get it right**.
- When you're **completely happy** with a sub-topic, tick it off.



## Atoms, Elements and Compounds (p.96-99) ☐

- 1) Sketch an atom. Label the nucleus and the electrons.
- 2) What is the charge of a proton?
- 3) True or False? Elements contain more than one type of atom.
- 4) Give the formula for:
  - a) Carbon dioxide
  - b) Sodium carbonate
- 5) Balance these equations:
  - a)  $\text{Mg} + \text{O}_2 \rightarrow \text{MgO}$
  - b)  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4 + \text{NaOH} \rightarrow \text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4 + \text{H}_2\text{O}$

## Mixtures and Separation (p.100-102) ☐

- 6) What is the difference between a compound and a mixture?
- 7) What is the name of the pattern formed from carrying out paper chromatography?
- 8) Which method of separation is useful to separate an insoluble solid from a liquid?
- 9) Give the name of a method to separate a soluble solid from a liquid.
- 10) Which method of distillation would you use to separate liquids with similar boiling points?

## Electronic Structure and the History of the Periodic Table (p.103-106) ☐

- 11) Who discovered that the plum pudding model was wrong?
- 12) Who first devised an experiment that proved the existence of the neutron?
- 13) What is the electronic structure of sodium?
- 14) Why did Mendeleev leave gaps in his Table of Elements?

## Groups of the Periodic Table (p.107-110) ☐

- 15) How are the group number and the number of electrons in the outer shell of an element related?
- 16) What kind of ions do metals form?
- 17) Where are non-metals on the periodic table?
- 18) State three trends as you go down Group 1.
- 19) State the products of the reaction of sodium and water.
- 20) How do the boiling points of halogens change as you go down the group from fluorine to astatine?
- 21) What is the charge of the ions that halogens form when they react with metals?
- 22) Predict whether iodine is displaced by chlorine in a solution of potassium iodide.
- 23) What is the trend in boiling point as you go down Group 0?



## Formation of Ions

Ions crop up all over the place in chemistry. You're gonna have to be able to explain how they form and predict the charges of simple ions formed by elements in Groups 1, 2, 6 and 7. You'd better get on...

### Ions are Made When Electrons are Transferred

- 1) Ions are charged particles — they can be single atoms (e.g.  $\text{Cl}^-$ ) or groups of atoms (e.g.  $\text{NO}_3^-$ ).
- 2) When atoms lose or gain electrons to form ions, all they're trying to do is get a full outer shell like a noble gas (also called a "stable electronic structure"). Atoms with full outer shells are very stable. Remember that the noble gases are in Group 0 of the periodic table.
- 3) When metals form ions, they lose electrons from their outer shell to form positive ions.
- 4) When non-metals form ions, they gain electrons into their outer shell to form negative ions.
- 5) The number of electrons lost or gained is the same as the charge on the ion. E.g. If 2 electrons are lost the charge is 2+. If 3 electrons are gained the charge is 3-.

### Groups 1 & 2 and 6 & 7 are the Most Likely to Form Ions

- 1) The elements that most readily form ions are those in Groups 1, 2, 6 and 7.
- 2) Group 1 and 2 elements are metals and they lose electrons to form positive ions (cations).
- 3) Group 6 and 7 elements are non-metals. They gain electrons to form negative ions (anions).
- 4) You don't have to remember what ions most elements form — nope, you just look at the periodic table.
- 5) Elements in the same group all have the same number of outer electrons. So they have to lose or gain the same number to get a full outer shell. And this means that they form ions with the same charges.

Group 1 elements form **1+** ions.

Group 2 elements form **2+** ions.

Group 6 elements form **2-** ions.

Group 7 elements form **1-** ions.

H																	He				
Li	Be															B	C	N	O	F	Ne
Na	Mg															Al	Si	P	S	Cl	Ar
K	Ca	Sc	Ti	V	Cr	Mn	Fe	Co	Ni	Cu	Zn	Ga	Ge	As	Se	Br	Kr				
Rb	Sr	Y	Zr	Nb	Mo	Tc	Ru	Rh	Pd	Ag	Cd	In	Sn	Sb	Te	I	Xe				
Cs	Ba	La	Hf	Ta	W	Re	Os	Ir	Pt	Au	Hg	Tl	Pb	Bi	Po	At	Rn				
Fr	Ra	Ac	Rf	Db	Sg	Bh	Hs	Mt	Ds	Rg											

- A sodium atom (Na) is in Group 1 so it loses 1 electron to form a sodium ion ( $\text{Na}^+$ ) with the same electronic structure as neon:  $\text{Na} \rightarrow \text{Na}^+ + e^-$ .
- A magnesium atom (Mg) is in Group 2 so it loses 2 electrons to form a magnesium ion ( $\text{Mg}^{2+}$ ) with the same electronic structure as neon:  $\text{Mg} \rightarrow \text{Mg}^{2+} + 2e^-$ .
- A chlorine atom (Cl) is in Group 7 so it gains 1 electron to form a chloride ion ( $\text{Cl}^-$ ) with the same electronic structure as argon:  $\text{Cl} + e^- \rightarrow \text{Cl}^-$ .
- An oxygen atom (O) is in Group 6 so it gains 2 electrons to form an oxide ion ( $\text{O}^{2-}$ ) with the same electronic structure as neon:  $\text{O} + 2e^- \rightarrow \text{O}^{2-}$ .

Have a look back at page 104 for how to work out electronic structures.

### I've got my ion you...

Some elements like to gain electrons, some elements like to lose electrons, but they all want to have a full outer shell. Poor little electron shells, all they want in life is to be full...

Q1 Explain why simple ions often have noble gas electronic structures.

[2 marks]

Q2 Predict the charges of the ions formed by the following elements:

- a) Bromine (Br)      b) Calcium (Ca)      c) Potassium (K)

[3 marks]



Q1 Video Solution



# Ionic Bonding

Time to find out how particles bond together to form compounds (bet you can't wait). There are **three** types of bonding you need to know about — **ionic**, **covalent** and **metallic**. First up, it's **ionic bonds**.

## Ionic Bonding — Transfer of Electrons

When a **metal** and a **non-metal** react together, the **metal atom loses** electrons to form a **positively charged ion** and the **non-metal gains these electrons** to form a **negatively charged ion**. These oppositely charged ions are **strongly attracted** to one another by **electrostatic forces**. This attraction is called an **ionic bond**.

## Dot and Cross Diagrams Show How Ionic Compounds are Formed

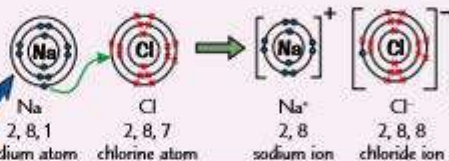
**Dot and cross diagrams** show the **arrangement** of electrons in an atom or ion. Each electron is represented by a **dot** or a **cross**. So these diagrams can show which **atom** the electrons in an **ion** originally came from.

### Sodium Chloride ( $\text{NaCl}$ )

The **sodium** atom gives up its outer electron, becoming an  **$\text{Na}^+$**  ion.

The **chlorine** atom picks up the electron, becoming a  **$\text{Cl}^-$**  (chloride) ion.

Here, the dots represent the Na electrons and the crosses represent the Cl electrons (all electrons are really identical, but this is a good way of following their movement).



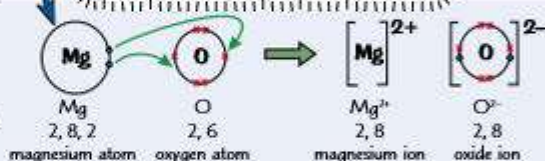
Remember, you can work out how many electrons an atom will gain or lose from its group number.

Here we've only shown the outer shells of electrons on the dot and cross diagram — it makes it much simpler to see what's going on.

The name's Bond, Ionic Bond.

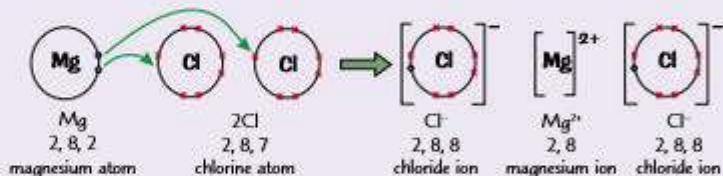
### Magnesium Oxide ( $\text{MgO}$ )

The **magnesium** atom gives up its **two** outer electrons, becoming an  **$\text{Mg}^{2+}$**  ion. The **oxygen** atom picks up the electrons, becoming an  **$\text{O}^{2-}$**  (oxide) ion.



### Magnesium Chloride ( $\text{MgCl}_2$ )

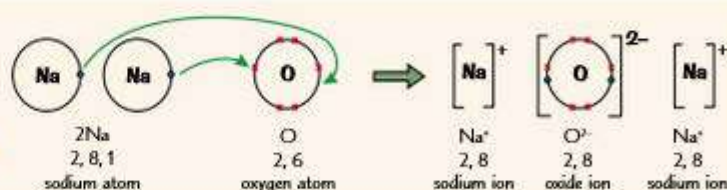
The **magnesium** atom gives up its **two** outer electrons, becoming an  **$\text{Mg}^{2+}$**  ion. The two **chlorine** atoms pick up **one electron each**, becoming **two  $\text{Cl}^-$**  (chloride) ions.



### Sodium Oxide ( $\text{Na}_2\text{O}$ )

Two **sodium** atoms each give up their single outer electron, becoming **two  $\text{Na}^+$**  ions.

The **oxygen** atom picks up the **two** electrons, becoming an  **$\text{O}^{2-}$**  ion.



Dot and cross diagrams are useful for showing how ionic compounds are formed, but they **don't** show the **structure** of the compound, the **size** of the ions or how they're **arranged**. But hey-ho — nothing's perfect.

## Any old ion, any old ion — any, any, any old ion...

You need to be able to describe how ionic compounds are formed using both words and dot and cross diagrams. It gets easier with practice, so here are some questions to get you started.

- Q1 Describe, in terms of electron transfer, how sodium (Na) and chlorine (Cl) react to form sodium chloride ( $\text{NaCl}$ ). [3 marks]
- Q2 Draw a dot and cross diagram to show how potassium (a Group 1 metal) and bromine (a Group 7 non-metal) form potassium bromide ( $\text{KBr}$ ). [3 marks]





# Ionic Compounds

I'd take everything on this page with a pinch of **salt** if I were you... Ho ho ho — I jest, it's important really.

## Ionic Compounds Have A Regular Lattice Structure

- 1) **ionic compounds** have a structure called a **giant ionic lattice**.
- 2) The ions form a closely packed **regular lattice** arrangement and there are very strong **electrostatic forces of attraction** between **oppositely charged ions**, in **all directions** in the lattice.

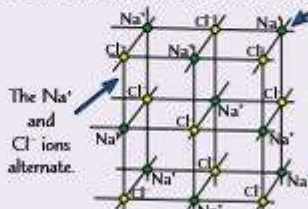
The electrostatic attraction between the oppositely charged ions is ionic bonding.

A single crystal of **sodium chloride** (table salt) is **one giant ionic lattice**. The  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  ions are held together in a regular lattice. The lattice can be represented in different ways...

This model shows the relative sizes of the ions, as well as the regular pattern of an ionic crystal, but it only lets you see the outer layer of the compound.



Make sure you learn what the structure of sodium chloride looks like.

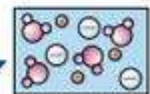


The  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  ions alternate.

This is a ball and stick model. It shows the regular pattern of an ionic crystal and shows how all the ions are arranged. It also suggests that the crystal extends beyond what's shown in the diagram. The model isn't to scale though, so the relative sizes of the ions may not be shown. Also, in reality, there aren't gaps between the ions.

## Ionic Compounds All Have Similar Properties

- 1) They all have **high melting points** and **high boiling points** due to the **many strong bonds** between the ions. It takes lots of **energy** to overcome this attraction.
- 2) When they're **solid**, the ions are held in place, so the compounds **can't** conduct electricity. When ionic compounds **melt**, the ions are **free to move** and they'll **carry electric charge**.
- 3) Some ionic compounds **dissolve** in water. The ions **separate** and are all **free to move** in the solution, so they'll **carry electric charge**.



Dissolved in Water

Melted

## Look at Charges to Find the Formula of an Ionic Compound

- 1) You might have to work out the **empirical formula** of an ionic compound from a diagram of the compound.
- 2) If it's a **dot and cross** diagram, count up how **many** atoms there are of **each element**. Write this down to give you the empirical formula.
- 3) If you're given a 3D diagram of the ionic lattice, **use** it to work out **what ions** are in the ionic compound.
- 4) You'll then have to **balance** the charges of the ions so that the overall charge on the compound is zero.

### EXAMPLE

What's the empirical formula of the ionic compound shown on the right?

- 1) Look at the diagram to work out what ions are in the compound.
- 2) Work out what **charges** the ions will form.
- 3) **Balance** the charges so the charge of the empirical formula is **zero**.

The compound contains **potassium** and **oxide** ions.

Potassium is in Group 1 so forms **1+** ions.

Oxygen is in Group 6 so forms **2-** ions.

A potassium ion only has a 1+ charge, so you'll need two of them to balance out the 2- charge of an oxide ion. The empirical formula is  **$\text{K}_2\text{O}$** .



$\text{O} = \text{Potassium ion}$   
 $\text{O} = \text{Oxide ion}$

## Giant ionic lattices — all over your chips...

Here's where you can get a little practice working out formulas for ionic compounds.

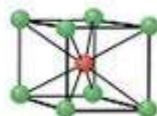
Q1 The structure of an ionic compound is shown on the right.

- a) Predict, with reasoning, whether the compound has a high or a low melting point.
- b) Explain why the compound can conduct electricity when molten.
- c) Use the diagram to find the empirical formula of the compound.

[2 marks]

[1 mark]

[3 marks]



$\text{O} = \text{sulfide ion}$   
 $\text{O} = \text{magnesium ion}$



Q1 Video Solution



# Covalent Bonding

Some elements bond ionically (see page 113) but others form strong **covalent** bonds. This is where atoms **share** electrons with each other so that they've got full outer shells.

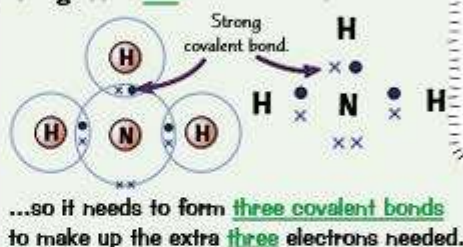
## Covalent Bonds — Sharing Electrons

- 1) When **non-metal** atoms bond together, they **share** pairs of electrons to make **covalent bonds**.
- 2) The positively charged nuclei of the bonded atoms are attracted to the shared pair of electrons by **electrostatic forces**, making covalent bonds very **strong**.
- 3) Atoms only share electrons in their **outer shells** (highest energy levels).
- 4) Each single **covalent bond** provides one **extra** shared electron for each atom.
- 5) Each atom involved generally makes **enough** covalent bonds to **fill up** its outer shell. Having a full outer shell gives them the electronic structure of a **noble gas**, which is very **stable**.
- 6) Covalent bonding happens in **compounds** of **non-metals** (e.g.  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) and in **non-metal elements** (e.g.  $\text{Cl}_2$ ).

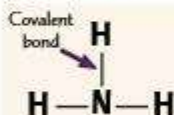
## There are Different Ways of Drawing Covalent Bonds

- 1) You can use **dot and cross diagrams** to show the bonding in covalent compounds.
- 2) Electrons drawn in the **overlap** between the outer orbitals of two atoms are **shared** between those atoms.
- 3) Dot and cross diagrams are useful for showing **which atoms** the electrons in a covalent bond come from, but they **don't** show the relative sizes of the atoms, or how the atoms are **arranged** in space.

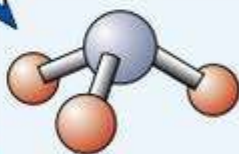
Nitrogen has **five** outer electrons...



You don't have to draw the orbitals in these diagrams. The important thing is that you get all the dots and crosses in the right places.



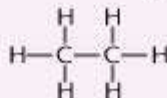
- 4) The **displayed formula** of ammonia ( $\text{NH}_3$ ) shows the covalent bonds as single lines between atoms.
- 5) This is a great way of showing **how** atoms are connected in **large** molecules. However, they **don't** show the **3D structure** of the molecule, or **which atoms** the electrons in the covalent bond have come from.
- 6) The 3D model of ammonia shows the **atoms**, the **covalent bonds** and their **arrangement** in space next to each other. But 3D models can quickly get **confusing** for large molecules where there are lots of atoms to include. They don't show **where** the electrons in the bonds have **come from**, either.
- 7) You can find the **molecular formula** of a simple molecular compound from **any** of these diagram by **counting up** how many atoms of each element there are.



### EXAMPLE

A diagram of the molecule ethane is shown on the right. Use the diagram to find the molecular formula of ethane.

In the diagram, there are two carbon atoms and six hydrogen atoms. So the molecular formula is  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_6$ .



A molecular formula shows you how many atoms of each element are in a molecule.

## Sharing is caring...

There's a whole page of dot and cross diagrams for other covalent molecules yet to come, but make sure you can draw the different diagrams that can be used to show the bonding in ammonia on this page first.

Q1 Draw a dot and cross diagram to show the bonding in a molecule of ammonia ( $\text{NH}_3$ ). [2 marks]





# Simple Molecular Substances

These molecules might be **simple**, but you've still gotta know about them. I know, the world is a cruel place.

## Learn These Examples of Simple Molecular Substances

**Simple molecular substances** are made up of molecules containing a **few atoms** joined together by **covalent bonds**. Here are some **common examples** that you should know...

### Hydrogen, $H_2$

Hydrogen atoms have just one electron. They **only need one more** to complete the first shell...



...so they often form **single covalent bonds**, either with other hydrogen atoms or with other elements, to achieve this.

### Chlorine, $Cl_2$

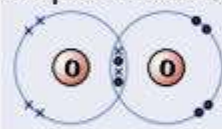
Each chlorine atom needs just **one more electron** to complete the outer shell...



...so two chlorine atoms can share one pair of electrons and form **a single covalent bond**.

### Oxygen, $O_2$

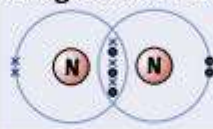
Each oxygen atom needs **two more electrons** to complete its outer shell...



...so in **oxygen gas** two oxygen atoms share **two pairs** of electrons with each other making a **double covalent bond**.

### Nitrogen, $N_2$

Nitrogen atoms need **three more electrons**...

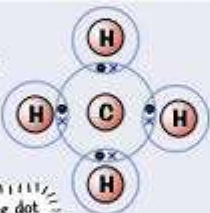


...so **two nitrogen atoms** share **three pairs of electrons** to fill their outer shells. This creates a **triple bond**.

### Methane, $CH_4$

Carbon has **four outer electrons**, which is **half** a full shell.

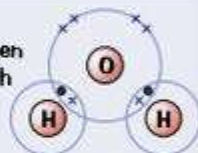
It can form **four covalent bonds** with **hydrogen** atoms to fill up its outer shell.



Make sure you can also draw the dot and cross diagram of ammonia,  $NH_3$ , which is on the previous page.

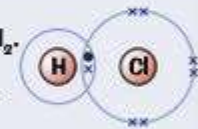
### Water, $H_2O$

In **water molecules**, the oxygen shares a pair of electrons with two H atoms to form two **single covalent bonds**.



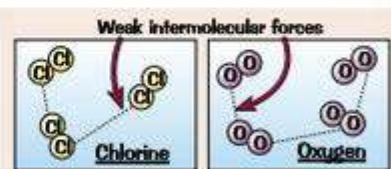
### Hydrogen Chloride, $HCl$

This is very similar to  $H_2$  and  $Cl_2$ . Again, both atoms **only need one more electron** to complete their outer shells.



## Properties of Simple Molecular Substances

- 1) Substances containing **covalent bonds** usually have **simple molecular structures**, like the examples above.
- 2) The atoms within the molecules are held together by **very strong covalent bonds**. By contrast, the forces of attraction **between** these molecules are **very weak**.
- 3) To melt or boil a simple molecular compound, you only need to break these **feeble intermolecular forces** and **not** the covalent bonds. So the melting and boiling points are **very low**, because the molecules are **easily parted** from each other.
- 4) Most molecular substances are **gases or liquids** at room temperature.
- 5) As molecules get **bigger**, the strength of the intermolecular forces **increases**, so **more energy** is needed to break them, and the melting and boiling points **increase**.
- 6) Molecular compounds **don't conduct electricity**, simply because they **aren't charged**, so there are **no free electrons** or ions.



## May the intermolecular force be with you...

Never forget that it's the weak forces between molecules that are broken when a simple molecular substance melts.

Q1 Explain why oxygen,  $O_2$ , is a gas at room temperature.

[1 mark]

Q2 Explain why nitrogen,  $N_2$ , doesn't conduct electricity.

[1 mark]



# Polymers and Giant Covalent Structures

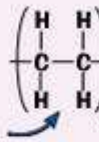
Wouldn't it be simply marvellous if only simple molecular substances had covalent bonds, and it was now time to put your feet up? Well it's not like that. **Polymers** and **giant covalent substances** also have **covalent bonds**.

## Polymers Are Long Chains of Repeating Units

- 1) In a polymer, lots of **small units** are linked together to form a **long molecule** that has repeating sections.
- 2) All the atoms in a polymer are joined by strong **covalent bonds**.
- 3) Instead of drawing out a whole long polymer molecule (which can contain thousands or even millions of atoms), you can draw the **shortest repeating section**, called the **repeating unit**, like this:
- 4) To find the **molecular formula** of a polymer, write down the molecular formula of the **repeating unit** in **brackets**, and put an '**n**' outside.
- 5) So for **poly(ethene)**, the molecular formula of the polymer is  **$(C_2H_4)_n$** .
- 6) The intermolecular forces between polymer molecules are **larger** than between simple covalent molecules, so **more energy** is needed to break them. This means most polymers are **solid** at room temperature.
- 7) The intermolecular forces are still **weaker** than ionic or covalent bonds, so they generally have **lower** boiling points than **ionic** or **giant molecular** compounds.

This polymer is called 'poly(ethene)'.

The bit in brackets is the repeating unit.



The bonds through the brackets join up to the next repeating unit.

'n' is a large number. It tells you that the unit's repeated lots of times.

## Giant Covalent Structures Are Macromolecules

- 1) In giant covalent structures, **all** the atoms are **bonded** to **each other** by **strong** covalent bonds.
- 2) They have **very high** melting and boiling points as lots of energy is needed to break the covalent bonds between the atoms.
- 3) They **don't** contain charged particles, so they **don't conduct electricity** — not even when **molten** (except for a few weird exceptions such as graphite, see next page).
- 4) The **main examples** that you need to know about are **diamond** and **graphite**, which are both made from **carbon atoms** only, and **silicon dioxide** (silica).

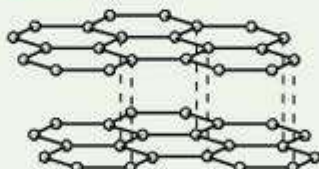
**Diamond:**



Each carbon atom forms **four covalent bonds** in a **very rigid** giant covalent structure.

There's more about diamond and graphite, as well as other types of carbon structure, on the next page.

**Graphite:**



Each carbon atom forms **three covalent bonds** to create **layers of hexagons**. Each carbon atom also has one **delocalised** (free) electron.

A free electron.



**Silicon dioxide:**



Sometimes called **silica**, this is what **sand** is made of. Each grain of sand is **one giant structure** of silicon and oxygen.

## What do you call a vehicle made of sand? Sili-car...

To melt or boil a simple molecular substance or a polymer, only the weakish intermolecular forces need to be broken. To melt or boil a giant covalent substance, you have to break very strong covalent bonds.

- Q1 The repeating unit of poly(chloroethene) is shown on the right. What's the molecular formula of poly(chloroethene)?



[1 mark]

- Q2 Predict, with reasoning, whether diamond or poly(ethene) has a higher melting point.

[3 marks]



Q1 Video Solution



# Allotropes of Carbon

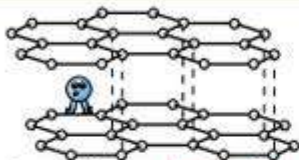
Allotropes are different structural forms of the same element in the same physical state. Carbon's got lots...

## Diamond is Very Hard

- 1) Diamond has a giant covalent structure, made up of carbon atoms that each form four covalent bonds. This makes diamond really hard.
- 2) Those strong covalent bonds take a lot of energy to break and give diamond a very high melting point.
- 3) It doesn't conduct electricity because it has no free electrons or ions.



## Graphite Contains Sheets of Hexagons



- 1) In graphite, each carbon atom only forms three covalent bonds, creating sheets of carbon atoms arranged in hexagons.
- 2) There aren't any covalent bonds between the layers — they're only held together weakly, so they're free to move over each other. This makes graphite soft and slippery, so it's ideal as a lubricating material.
- 3) Graphite's got a high melting point — the covalent bonds in the layers need loads of energy to break.
- 4) Only three out of each carbon's four outer electrons are used in bonds, so each carbon atom has one electron that's delocalised (free) and can move. So graphite conducts electricity and thermal energy.

## Graphene is One Layer of Graphite

Graphene is a sheet of carbon atoms joined together in hexagons. The sheet is just one atom thick, making it a two-dimensional substance.

The network of covalent bonds makes it very strong. It's also incredibly light, so can be added to composite materials to improve their strength without adding much weight.

Like graphite, it contains delocalised electrons so can conduct electricity through the whole structure. This means it has the potential to be used in electronics.



## Fullerenes Form Spheres and Tubes

- 1) Fullerenes are molecules of carbon, shaped like closed tubes or hollow balls.
- 2) They're mainly made up of carbon atoms arranged in hexagons, but can also contain pentagons (rings of five carbon atoms) or heptagons (rings of seven carbon atoms).
- 3) Fullerenes can be used to 'catch' other molecules. The fullerene structure forms around another atom or molecule, which is then trapped inside. This could be used to deliver a drug into the body.
- 4) Fullerenes have a huge surface area, so they could help make great industrial catalysts — individual catalyst molecules could be attached to the fullerenes. Fullerenes also make great lubricants.



Buckminsterfullerene was the first fullerene to be discovered. It's got the molecular formula C<sub>60</sub> and forms a hollow sphere.

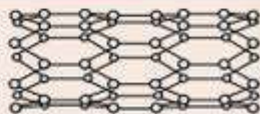
Fullerenes can form nanotubes — tiny carbon cylinders.

The ratio between the length and the diameter of nanotubes is very high.

Nanotubes can conduct both electricity and thermal energy (heat).

They also have a high tensile strength (they don't break when they're stretched).

Technology that uses very small particles such as nanotubes is called nanotechnology. Nanotubes can be used in electronics or to strengthen materials without adding much weight, such as in tennis racket frames.



## Greetings in the Caribbean — they're 'allo-tropical...

Before you go on, make sure you can explain the properties of all these allotropes of carbon.

Q1 Give three uses of fullerenes.

[3 marks]

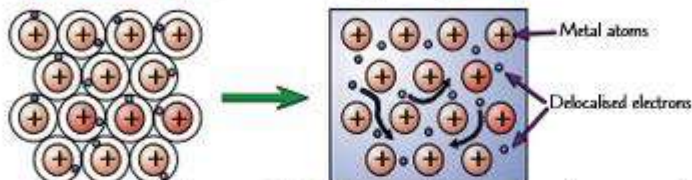


# Metallic Bonding

Ever wondered what makes **metals** tick? Well, either way, this is the page for you.

## Metallic Bonding Involves Delocalised Electrons

- 1) **Metals** also consist of a **giant structure**.
- 2) The electrons in the **outer shell** of the metal atoms are **delocalised** (free to move around). There are strong forces of **electrostatic attraction** between the **positive metal ions** and the shared **negative electrons**.
- 3) These forces of attraction **hold** the **atoms** together in a **regular** structure and are known as **metallic bonding**. Metallic bonding is very **strong**.



- 4) Substances that are held together by metallic bonding include metallic **elements** and **alloys** (see below).
- 5) It's the **delocalised electrons** in the metallic bonds which produce **all** the properties of metals.

## Most Metals are Solid at Room Temperature

The electrostatic forces between the metal atoms and the delocalised sea of electrons are very **strong**, so need **lots of energy** to be broken.

This means that most compounds with metallic bonds have very **high** melting and boiling points, so they're generally **solid** at room temperature.

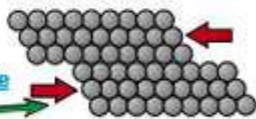


## Metals are Good Conductors of Electricity and Heat

The **delocalised electrons** carry electrical charge and thermal (heat) energy through the whole structure, so metals are good **conductors** of **electricity** and **heat**.

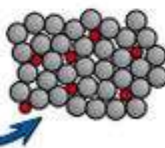
## Most Metals are Malleable

The layers of atoms in a metal can **slide** over each other, making metals **malleable** — this means that they can be **bent** or **hammered** or **rolled** into **flat sheets**.



## Alloys are Harder Than Pure Metals

- 1) **Pure metals** often aren't quite right for certain jobs — they're often **too soft** when they're pure so are **mixed** with other metals to make them **harder**. Most of the metals we use everyday are **alloys** — a **mixture** of **two or more metals** or a **metal and another element**. Alloys are **harder** and so more useful than pure metals.
- 2) Different elements have **different sized atoms**. So when another element is mixed with a pure metal, the new metal atoms will **distort** the layers of metal atoms, making it more difficult for them to slide over each other. This makes alloys **harder** than pure metals.



## I saw a metal on the bus once — he was the conductor...

If your knowledge of metals is still feeling a bit delocalised, the questions below will help...

- Q1 Copper is a metallic element. Describe and explain what property of copper makes it suitable for using in electrical circuits. [2 marks]
- Q2 Suggest why an alloy of copper, rather than pure copper, is used to make hinges for doors. [1 mark]

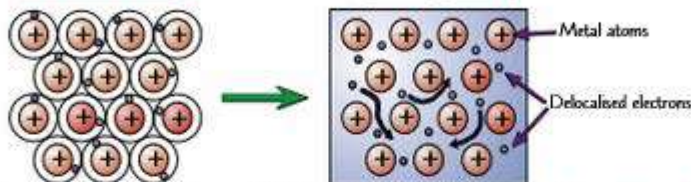


# Metallic Bonding

Ever wondered what makes **metals** tick? Well, either way, this is the page for you.

## Metallic Bonding Involves Delocalised Electrons

- 1) **Metals** also consist of a **giant structure**.
- 2) The electrons in the **outer shell** of the metal atoms are **delocalised** (free to move around). There are strong forces of **electrostatic attraction** between the **positive metal ions** and the shared **negative electrons**.
- 3) These forces of attraction **hold** the **atoms** together in a **regular** structure and are known as **metallic bonding**. Metallic bonding is very **strong**.



- 4) Substances that are held together by metallic bonding include metallic **elements** and **alloys** (see below).
- 5) It's the **delocalised electrons** in the metallic bonds which produce **all** the properties of metals.

## Most Metals are Solid at Room Temperature

The electrostatic forces between the metal atoms and the delocalised sea of electrons are very **strong**, so need **lots of energy** to be broken.

This means that most compounds with metallic bonds have very **high** melting and boiling points, so they're generally **solid** at room temperature.

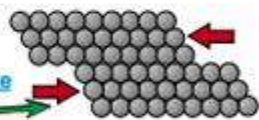


## Metals are Good Conductors of Electricity and Heat

The **delocalised electrons** carry electrical charge and thermal (heat) energy through the whole structure, so metals are good **conductors** of **electricity** and **heat**.

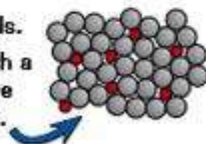
## Most Metals are Malleable

The layers of atoms in a metal can **slide** over each other, making metals **malleable** — this means that they can be **bent** or **hammered** or **rolled** into **flat sheets**.



## Alloys are Harder Than Pure Metals

- 1) **Pure metals** often aren't quite right for certain jobs — they're often **too soft** when they're pure so are **mixed** with other metals to make them **harder**. Most of the metals we use everyday are **alloys** — a **mixture** of **two or more metals** or a **metal and another element**. Alloys are **harder** and so more useful than pure metals.
- 2) Different elements have **different sized atoms**. So when another element is mixed with a pure metal, the new metal atoms will **distort** the layers of metal atoms, making it more difficult for them to slide over each other. This makes alloys **harder** than pure metals.



## I saw a metal on the bus once — he was the conductor...

If your knowledge of metals is still feeling a bit delocalised, the questions below will help...

- Q1 Copper is a metallic element. Describe and explain what property of copper makes it suitable for using in electrical circuits.
- Q2 Suggest why an alloy of copper, rather than pure copper, is used to make hinges for doors.

[2 marks]

[1 mark]



# States of Matter

Better get your thinking hat on, as **states of matter** really... err... matter. You'll need to imagine the **particles** in a substance as little snooker balls. Sounds strange, but it's useful for explaining lots of stuff in chemistry.

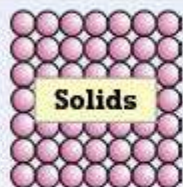
## The Three States of Matter — Solid, Liquid and Gas

Materials come in **three** different forms — **solid**, **liquid** and **gas**. These are the **three states of matter**. Which **state** something is at a certain temperature (**solid**, **liquid** or **gas**) depends on how **strong** the forces of attraction are between the particles of the material. How strong the forces are depends on **THREE THINGS**:

- the **material** (the structure of the substance and the type of bonds holding the particles together),
- the **temperature**,
- the **pressure**.

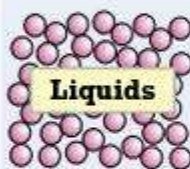
The particles could be atoms, ions or molecules.

You can use a **model** called **particle theory** to explain how the particles in a material behave in each of the three states of matter by considering each particle as a **small, solid, inelastic sphere**.



**Solids**

- In solids, there are **strong forces** of attraction between particles, which holds them **close together** in **fixed positions** to form a very regular **lattice arrangement**.
- The particles **don't move** from their positions, so all solids keep a **definite shape** and **volume**, and don't flow like liquids.
- The particles **vibrate** about their positions — the **hotter** the solid becomes, the **more** they vibrate (causing solids to **expand** slightly when heated).



**Liquids**

- In liquids, there's a **weak force** of attraction between the particles. They're randomly arranged and **free** to **move** past each other, but they tend to **stick closely together**.
- Liquids have a definite volume but **don't** keep a **definite shape**, and will flow to fill the bottom of a container.
- The particles are **constantly** moving with **random motion**. The **hotter** the liquid gets, the **faster** they move. This causes liquids to **expand** slightly when heated.



**Gases**

- In gases, the force of attraction between the particles is **very weak** — they're **free** to **move** and are **far apart**. The particles in gases travel in **straight lines**.
- Gases **don't** keep a definite **shape** or **volume** and will always **fill** any container.
- The particles move **constantly** with **random motion**. The **hotter** the gas gets, the **faster** they move. Gases either **expand** when heated, or their **pressure increases**.

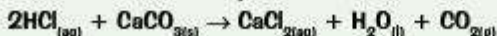
Particle theory is a great **model** for explaining the three states of matter, but it **isn't perfect**. In reality, the particles aren't solid or inelastic and they aren't spheres — they're atoms, ions or molecules. Also, the model doesn't **show** the **forces** between the particles, so there's no way of knowing **how strong** they are.

## State Symbols Tell You the State of a Substance in an Equation

You saw on page 99 how a chemical reaction can be shown using a **word equation** or **symbol equation**. Symbol equations can also include **state symbols** next to each substance — they tell you what **physical state** the reactants and products are in:

**(s) — solid (l) — liquid (g) — gas (aq) — aqueous**

For example, aqueous hydrochloric acid reacts with solid calcium carbonate to form aqueous calcium chloride, liquid water and carbon dioxide gas:



'Aqueous' means 'dissolved in water'.

## Phew, what a page — particle-ularly gripping stuff...

I think it's pretty clever the way you can explain all the differences between solids, liquids and gases with just a page full of pink snooker balls. Anyway, that's the easy bit. The not-so-easy bit is learning it all.

Q1 Substance A does not have a definite shape or volume. What state is it in?

[1 mark]



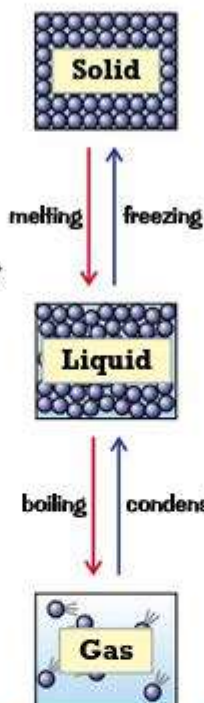
# Changing State

This page is like a game show. To start, everyone seems nice and solid, but turn up the **heat** and it all changes.

## Substances Can Change from One State to Another

**Physical changes** don't change the particles — just their **arrangement** or their **energy**.

- 1) When a solid is **heated**, its particles gain more **energy**.
- 2) This makes the particles vibrate **more**, which **weakens** the **forces** that hold the solid together.
- 3) At a **certain temperature**, called the **melting point** the particles have enough energy to **break free** from their positions. This is called **MELTING** and the **solid** turns into a **liquid**.
- 4) When a liquid is **heated**, again the particles get even **more** energy.
- 5) This energy makes the particles move **faster**, which **weakens** and **breaks** the bonds holding the liquid together.
- 6) At a **certain temperature**, called the **boiling point**, the particles have **enough** energy to **break** their bonds. This is **BOILING** (or **evaporating**). The **liquid** becomes a **gas**.



- 12) At the **melting point**, so many bonds have formed between the particles that they're **held in place**. The **liquid** becomes a **solid**. This is **FREEZING**.
- 11) There's not enough energy to overcome the attraction between the particles, so more **bonds** form between them.
- 10) When a **liquid cools**, the particles have **less energy**, so move around less.
- 9) At the **boiling point**, so many bonds have formed between the gas particles that the **gas** becomes a **liquid**. This is called **CONDENSING**.
- 8) **Bonds form** between the particles.
- 7) As a gas **cools**, the particles no longer have **enough energy** to overcome the forces of attraction between them.

So, the amount of energy needed for a substance to change state depends on **how strong** the forces between particles are. The **stronger** the forces, the **more energy** is needed to break them, and so the **higher** the melting and boiling points of the substance.

## You Have to be Able to Predict the State of a Substance

You might be asked to predict **what state** a substance is in at a **certain temperature**. If the temperature's **below** the **melting point** of substance, it'll be a **solid**. If it's **above** the **boiling point**, it'll be a **gas**. If it's **in between** the two points, then it's a **liquid**.

The bulk properties such as the melting point of a material depend on how lots of atoms interact together. An atom on its own doesn't have these properties.

### EXAMPLE

Which of the molecular substances in the table is a liquid at room temperature (25 °C)?

	melting point	boiling point
oxygen	-219 °C	-183 °C
nitrogen	-210 °C	-196 °C
bromine	-7 °C	59 °C

Oxygen and nitrogen have boiling points below 25 °C, so will both be gases at room temperature.

So the answer's **bromine**. It melts at -7 °C and boils at 59 °C. So, it'll be a liquid at room temperature.

## Some people are worth melting for...

Make sure you can describe what happens to particles, and the forces between them, as a substance is heated and cooled. Then learn all the technical terms, and you'll sound like a states of matter pro.

Q1 Ethanol melts at -114 °C and boils at 78 °C. Predict the state that ethanol is in at:

- a) -150 °C      b) 0 °C      c) 25 °C      d) 100 °C      [4 marks]



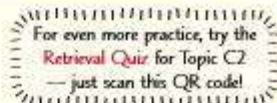
Q1 Video Solution



# Revision Questions for Topic C2

Now you've finished **Topic C2**, I bet I can guess what you're after next. Some questions to test how much of this topic you can remember...

- Try these questions and **tick off each one** when you **get it right**.
- When you're **completely happy** with a sub-topic, tick it off.



## Ions and Ionic Compounds (p.112-114) ☐

- 1) What type of ion do elements from each of the following groups form?
  - a) Group 1 ☐
  - b) Group 7 ☐
- 2) Describe how an ionic bond forms. ☐
- 3) Sketch dot and cross diagrams to show the formation of:
  - a) sodium chloride
  - b) magnesium oxide
  - c) magnesium chloride
  - d) sodium oxide
- 4) Describe the structure of a crystal of sodium chloride. ☐
- 5) List the main properties of ionic compounds. ☐

## Covalent Substances (p.115-118) ☐

- 6) Describe how covalent bonds form. ☐
- 7) Sketch dot and cross diagrams showing the bonding in a molecule of:
  - a) hydrogen
  - b) water
  - c) hydrogen chloride
- 8) Explain why simple molecular compounds typically have low melting and boiling points. ☐
- 9) Describe the structure of a polymer. ☐
- 10) Give three examples of giant covalent substances. ☐
- 11) Explain why graphite can conduct electricity. ☐
- 12) Explain how fullerenes could be used to deliver drugs into the body. ☐

## Metallic Bonding (p.119) ☐

- 13) What is metallic bonding? ☐
- 14) List three properties of metals and explain how metallic structure causes each property. ☐
- 15) Explain why alloys are harder than pure metals. ☐

## States of Matter (p.120-121) ☐

- 16) Name the three states of matter. ☐
- 17) What is the state symbol of an aqueous substance? ☐
- 18) What is the name of the temperature at which a liquid becomes a gas? ☐
- 19) How does the strength of the forces between particles influence the temperature at which a substance changes state? ☐